



**NATIONAL COLLEGE
OF
CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)**

Lung Bulletin

NEWSLETTER OF NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

SECOND ISSUE JULY – DECEMBER 2020

THEME – PULMONARY FUNCTION TESTS



HIGHLIGHTS

- PULMONARY FUNCTION TESTS
- BOOKS AND PUBLICATIONS
- POST - GRADUATE QUIZ
- ACADEMIC ACTIVITIES
- TRAVEL GRANT
- E - COURSES
- NAPCON 2020
- NEBULIZATION GUIDELINES
- MEMBER'S CORNER
- MEMBERSHIP BENEFITS
- OUTSTANDING ACHIEVERS
- ACADEMIC CALENDAR



With best compliments from

 **Budamate**

Formoterol & Budesonide



 **Esiflo**

Salmeterol and Fluticasone Propionate

The Synonym of Trust

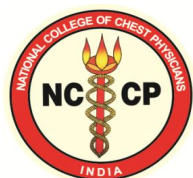
 **Formoflo**

Formoterol + Fluticasone Transhaler (125, 250) & Transcaps (100,250)

The Superior Choice

P2i-D

Pantoprazole 40 mg (As enteric coated pellets) +
Domperidone 30 mg (As sustained release pellets) Capsules



NCCP(I) LUNG BULLETIN INDEX

Sr. No.	Title	Author(s)	Page Nos.
SECTION I			
1	<i>Index</i>		3
2	<i>Academic Calendar</i>		4
3	<i>Messages</i>		
3.1	NCCP(I) President	P. D. Motiani	6
3.2	NCCP(I) Secretary	S. N. Gaur	7
3.3	Chairman, NCCP(I) Scientific Committee and Academic Forum	S. K. Katiyar	8
3.4	Editor, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin	Nikhil Sarangdhar	9
4	<i>Member's Corner</i>		
4.1	National		10
4.2	International		11
5	<i>NCCP(I) Membership Drive</i>		
5.1	NCCP(I) Membership Benefits		12
5.2	NCCP(I) Membership Form		13
5.3	NCCP(I) Directory Entry Form		15
6	<i>NCCP(I) Governing Council (2020 - 2021)</i>		16
7	<i>Academic and Educational Activities of NCCP(I)</i>		
7.1	NCCP(I) E - Courses : CPMcC and IPeC		17
7.2	NCCP(I) Indian Guidelines on Nebulization Therapy		18
7.3	NCCP(I) Books and Publications		20
7.4	NCCP(I) Travel Grants and Prof. S. N. Gaur Young Scientist Award		23
7.5	NCCP(I) PG Quiz in Respiratory Diseases 2019 and 2020		24
8	<i>NAPCON</i>		
8.1	About NAPCON		31
8.2	NAPCON 2020 (Virtual)		33
9	<i>Congratulatory Messages to Outstanding Achievers</i>		
	NCCP(I) and ICS Awardees and NAPCON 2020 Prize Winners		37
10	SECTION II - PULMONARY FUNCTION TESTS		
10.1	Introduction and History of Pulmonary Function Testing	P. S. Shankar	46
10.2	Lung Volumes and Capacities	Amita Nene, Neel Thakkar	48
10.3	Spirometry Basics : Clinical Applications, Procedure, Quality Control and Interpretation	Mohan Kumar Thekkinkattil, Nikhil Sarangdhar	53
10.4	Spirometry in Upper Airway Obstruction	Unnati Desai, Ketaki Utpat	71
10.5	Pitfalls of Spirometry	S. K. Jindal	75
10.6	Spirometry : Interesting Cases	Rohit Kumar	78
10.7	Peak Expiratory Flow : Estimation and Clinical Applications	Virendra Singh, Nishtha Singh	86
10.8	Measurement of Diffusion Capacity	Ramakant Dixit	89
10.9	Pre-Operative Pulmonary Assessment	P. Arjun, Soofia Mohammed	92
10.10	Assessment of Fitness to Fly	Naveen Dutt, Kunal Deokar, Shahir Asfahan	96
10.11	Body Plethysmography	Lavina Mirchandani	99
10.12	Cardio-Pulmonary Exercise Testing : Measurement and Clinical Utility	P. S. Tampi	105
10.13	Assessment of Respiratory Muscle Strength	Randeep Guleria	110
10.14	Impulse Oscillometry	Ritisha Bhatt	112
10.15	FENO : Measurement and Clinical Applications	Saurabh Mittal	115
10.16	Arterial Blood Gas Interpretation	Supriya Sarkar	118
10.17	Spirometry Practice in the COVID Era	P. S. Shankar	121

ACADEMIC CALENDAR

KINDLY BLOCK YOUR DATES !

Sr. No.	DATES	CONFERENCE	VENUE	WEBSITE
1.	January 27 - 31	NAPCON 2020 22 nd National Conference on Pulmonary Diseases - Joint National Conference of National College of Chest Physicians (India) and Indian Chest Society	VIRTUAL	https://www.virtualnapcon2020.com
2.	February 17 - 19	British Thoracic Society (BTS) Winter Meeting	London	https://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/education-and-events/winter-meeting/
3.	March 9 - 11	18 th World Conference on Tobacco or Health	Dublin	https://www.wctoh.org
4.	March 17 - 20	15 th International Conference of International Mesothelioma Interest Group 2021 (iMig 2021)	Brisbane	https://imig2021.org/
5.	March 25 - 27	European Lung Cancer Congress 2021	Virtual	https://www.esmo.org/meetings/european-lung-cancer-congress-2021
6.	April 8 - 11	Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine 2021	Scottsdale	https://ce.mayo.edu/pulmonary-medicine/content/multidisciplinary-update
7.	April 20 - 21	6 th Annual Inhalation and Respiratory Drug Delivery Congress 2021	London	https://www.oxfordglobal.co.uk/formulation-delivery-series-uk/
8.	May 14 - 19	American Thoracic Society (ATS) International Conference 2021	San Diego (Virtual)	https://conference.thoracic.org
9.	June 24 - 27	20 th International Congress on Pediatric Pulmonology (CIPP XX)	Virtual	https://www.cipp-meeting.org/en/
10.	June 25 - 26	Pneumo Update Europe 2021	Vienna	https://pneumo-update-europe.eu/
11.	September 4 - 8	European Respiratory Society (ERS) Congress	Barcelona	https://erscongress.org/
12.	October 15 - 17	APAAACI 2021 Joint TAACI - International Conference of the Asia-Pacific Association of Allergy, Asthma and Clinical Immunology	Kaohsiung (Taiwan)	https://apaaaci2021.org/
13.	October 17 - 20	American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) CHEST Annual Meeting (CHEST 2021)	Orlando (Virtual)	https://chestmeeting.chestnet.org/
14.	November 18 - 21	25 th Congress of the Asian Pacific Society of Respirology (APSR)	Kyoto	https://apsr2021.jp/about/information/



NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

DEAR COLLEAGUES,

AS MEMBERS / FELLOWS OF NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA) ,

ARE YOU GETTING

- ▶ E-voting form sent to Your E-mail to Vote in Yearly Elections to NCCP(I) Governing Council ?
- ▶ Communications through E-mail and invitations to attend NCCP(I) Annual General Body Meeting (AGM) ?
- ▶ Indian Journal of Chest Diseases and Allied Sciences (Quarterly issues) by Post ?
- ▶ NCCP(I) National Directory of Chest Physicians (Every 5 years) ?

IF THE ANSWER TO ANY OF THESE IS

NO

HAVE ANY OF THESE CHANGED

- ▶ E-mail ID or Address ?
- ▶ Mobile Number ?
- ▶ Postal Address ?
- ▶ Residence ?
- ▶ Clinic or Hospital ?
- ▶ Institution or Place Where You Work ?

IF THE ANSWER TO ANY OF THESE IS

YES

THEN IT'S TIME TO UPDATE YOUR COMMUNICATION DATA IN OUR RECORD !

Please send an E-mail to Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur, Secretary, NCCP(I) to sngaur9@gmail.com mentioning Your Name and NCCP(I) Life-Membership or Life-Fellowship Number and providing the contact details below with a request to update Your information in NCCP(I) record :

1. Active Mobile Number
2. Working E-Mail ID
3. Complete Postal Address (with Landmark, Street, District, City and PIN-CODE)

Should You need any assistance or have any queries regarding Your NCCP(I) Membership or Benefits, feel free to contact us. Our Support is always available to help You !

COMMUNICATE WITH US



www.nccpindia.org



Dr. S. N. Gaur, Gaur Clinic, 130 - A, Patparganj Village, Delhi – 110091



sngaur9@gmail.com , ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com



(+91) 9811271916 , (+91) 9029429015

From The Desk of President, NCCP(I)



Prof. Dr. P. D. Motiani

President, NCCP(I) (2020-2021)

**Retd. Senior Professor & Head (Pulmonary Medicine), Dr. S. N. Medical College, Jodhpur, Rajasthan
Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2010**

**Recipient of NCCP(I) – German Remedies Chest Oration and
NCCP(I) Rajasthan Chapter - Prof. S. N. Gaur Oration**

E-mail : drpdmotiani@gmail.com

Dear Colleagues,

It is a matter of pleasure that the second Newsletter of National College of Chest Physicians (India) [NCCP (I)] is going to be released. It is dedicated to pulmonary function testing. Pulmonary function tests are non-invasive tests that show how well the lungs are working. Pulmonary function tests measure lung volumes, capacities, rate of flow, and gas exchange in the subjects for diagnostic and prognostic purposes in symptomatic lung problems, in subjects exposed to substances at the workplace, and also to monitor chronic lung diseases. Pulmonary function tests have limitations with heart diseases, surgeries, obesity, pregnancy and other respiratory infections. They require trained personnel to perform with specialized equipment in pulmonary labs or departments.

The new techniques and tests are now available. The second issue of the Newsletter of NCCP (I) will be informative to all of us, contributed by eminent pulmonologists on various Pulmonary Function Tests.

I congratulate Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar for his passion and hard work in bringing out second issue of Newsletter of NCCP (I).

From The Desk of Secretary, NCCP(I)



Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur

Secretary, NCCP (I)

Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2020

Professor & Head, Department of TB & Respiratory Diseases, School of Medical Sciences & Research, Sharda University, Greater Noida, NCR Delhi

Former Director (Acting), Vallabhbhai Patel Chest Institute, University of Delhi

Recipient of 12 national awards and other academic honours including Commonwealth Fellowship

Chairman, Allergen Standardization Committee, Government of India

E-mail : sngaur9@gmail.com

Dear Colleagues,

The National College of Chest Physicians (India) [NCCP(I)] is a registered body functioning to promote the cause of Chest Diseases and Allied Sciences in India and to take this specialty forward in the field of Medicine. It was formed originally with 58 founder members as the Indian Association of Chest Diseases (IACD) in 1959 at the Indian Science Congress. The IACD in its meeting held on November 15, 1979 subsequently ratified by the General Body meeting held on November 6, 1979, unanimously decided to change the name of IACD to National College of Chest Physicians (India) and to make consequential changes/amendments in the memorandum of the Association, and its rules and regulations by a sub-committee, duly constituted for this purpose and the recommendations were confirmed and approved by the prescribed authority and confirmed at a subsequent special meeting of the General Body held on August 14, 1980. The National College of Chest Physicians (India) thus came into being in January, 1981. Since then, it has grown from strength to strength and currently has on its roll more than 1800 Members and 300 Fellows, making it one of the largest national registered professional medical associations, contributing to the development of the specialty of Pulmonary Medicine since its inception. The mission of NCCP(I) is to promote academic growth, partnership and collaboration for education in a rapidly developing world and develop strategies for better clinical practice in Pulmonary Medicine.

The NCCP(I) official website is www.nccpindia.org. The Indian Journal of Chest Diseases and Allied Sciences is the official publication of NCCP(I) and is published jointly with Vallabhbhai Patel Chest Institute, Delhi. This journal is indexed and has been widely acclaimed at both national and international levels. In addition, the NCCP (I) publishes a Directory of Chest Physicians, which is updated every 5 years. Under the convenorship of Dr. Rajesh Chawla, Past President of NCCP(I), the College has launched two E-courses - Comprehensive Pulmonary Medicine E-course (CPMeC) and Interventional Pulmonology E-course (IPeC) for the benefit of post-graduates and clinicians practising in the specialty. The CPMeC was the first online course in Pulmonary Medicine in India accredited by the National Board of Examinations, New Delhi and met with resounding success, having nationwide enrolment of more than 1400 doctors. IPEC has been launched last year. NCCP(I) in collaboration with ICS has also developed guidelines for Pneumonia, Vaccination, ILD, COPD, Bronchoscopy, Spirometry, and the progress is going on for Guidelines of Pleural Diseases, Medical Thoracoscopy and revised COPD guidelines. NCCP(I) has also developed National guidelines on Nebulization therapy. NCCP(I) also encourages original research by young scientists and consultants by providing travel grants to all members and fellows for upgrading their knowledge by attending national and international conferences (ACCP, ATS, APSR, Gulf Thoracic and others).

Ever since its inception, the College held 33 conferences with the Association of Physicians of India and since the 28th conference, it has organized its annual conferences (NACCON) independently. These conferences were highly successful and were chaired by the President of NCCP(I). From 1999, the NCCP(I) with ICS is having Joint National Conference on Pulmonary Diseases – NAPCON. I am happy to inform you that all the last twenty-one NAPCONS were a grand success, appreciated by the delegates and international faculty. I am sure that the same spirit will continue and we will have more and more participation as well as better conferences in future. This year, NAPCON-2020 is being organized and as in the past, we are expecting a good number of foreign faculties from ACCP, ATS, ERS, APSR, Gulf Thoracic Society and from neighboring countries. I have full confidence that NAPCON-2020 will be organized with best efforts in a manner to make it a most memorable event.

NCCP(I) also started under the leadership of then President Dr. Rajesh Chawla, a Newsletter titled “Pulmonary Communications” in 2016, which was continued as “Lung Bulletin” in 2020 with Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar as Editor, NCCP(I) Newsletter. The NCCP(I) Newsletter is aimed at updating current knowledge about various respiratory diseases, to acquaint our young enthusiastic Post-graduates and Chest Physicians with events of interest occurring in our specialty and also provide them a platform to interact with each other and to participate in the exchange of knowledge. The newsletter will be published twice-yearly with each issue dedicated to a different topic. The First issue of Newsletter, dedicated to Pulmonary Hypertension was very successful and well received and appreciated by all members and fellows of the college. On behalf of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) as well as on my personal behalf, I congratulate Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar, who is the Editor, NCCP(I) Newsletter for his hard work in bringing out the second issue of NCCP(I) Newsletter, dedicated to “Pulmonary Function Tests” which I am confident will be appreciated by all our colleagues in the field. I am sure that this endeavour will be useful and I wish the NCCP(I) Newsletter all success.

From The Desk of
Chairman, Scientific Committee, NAPCON 2020
and Academic Forum, NCCP(I)



Prof. Dr. S. K. Katiyar

Chairman, Scientific Committee, NAPCON-2020 & Academic Forum, NCCP(I)

Zonal Chairman (Central Zone), NCCP(I) , Lifetime Achievement Awardee, NCCP(I)

Gold Medal Awardee, Tuberculosis Association of India & U.P. TB Association

Formerly

Principal & Dean, Professor & Head, Department of Tuberculosis & Respiratory Diseases,

G.S.V.M. Medical College & C.S.J.M. University, Kanpur

President, NCCP(I) (2003-2004); TB Association of India (2007-2008); ICS (2009-2010)

Chairman, Scientific Committee, NAPCON-2014, 2016 & 2018 & Organizing Secretary, NAPCON-2000

E-mail : skkatiyar.napcon@gmail.com

Dear Colleagues,

It is my great pleasure to extend heartfelt greetings to the readers of the Newsletter of National College of Chest Physicians (India). I congratulate Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar, Editor, NCCP(I) Newsletter for his efforts in bringing out the second issue of this bi-annual publication, which is not just a newsletter, but much beyond, in terms of its rich and varied academic content. Each issue is being dedicated to one disease of clinical interest, this time 'Pulmonary Function Tests', with the aim to have a comprehensive coverage of all its clinical aspects and making it more case oriented also. This will not only attract our younger members, but all others too, to update their knowledge on diagnosis and management of respiratory illnesses . Efforts of the entire Editorial Board and the Governing body are commendable and need appreciation for this splendid effort.

I am sure the NCCP(I) Newsletter – Lung Bulletin will also prove useful to all members to keep them informed and provide them with updated news, events, reports and other information. The bulletin will also bridge the gap between the members and the College and become a medium of communication between the two, who otherwise, can only learn about the achievements and activities of the College during the annual general body meeting held once a year during the conference. The newsletter is a media for the members through which they can share their information, knowledge, experiences and concerns. Further it will also help to connect the members promoting better understanding and cooperation.

As Chairman of the Scientific Committee of NAPCON – 2020, it is my proud privilege and honour to invite and welcome you all to this year's conference and I can assure that you are going to witness one of the best scientific programs, which will be rich in its contents and purposeful too, to entirely change the perspective of your day to day clinical approach.

I wish all the readers of the NCCP(I) Newsletter an enriching and informative reading experience and will welcome their feedback on this new communication. My best wishes to Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar and his editorial team for grand success of this venture.

Please Take Care, Stay Safe and Healthy during this COVID-19 crisis .

From The Desk of Editor, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin



Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar

Editor, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin

Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2020 & 2016

**Former Assistant Professor, Department of TB & Chest diseases, K. J. Somaiya medical college, Mumbai
Young Scientist Awardee of the Indian College of Allergy Asthma and Immunology (2011, 2014 & 2015),**

Association of Physicians of India (2015), Indian Chest Society (2015),

National College of Chest Physicians - India (2017)

E-mail : ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com

Dear Colleagues,

National College of Chest Physicians (India) [NCCP(I)] recognizes the ever growing scope and potential of Pulmonary Medicine in India and seeks to tap the pool of knowledge, skill and talent available in our country to keep up with the growth of our field nationally and globally. The news that all students and practising specialists of Pulmonary Medicine, both the young and the elderly, are going to be provided a common academic platform ignites a scientific temper which spreads like a raging inferno, inculcating a deep academic interest to learn by interaction by sharing their ideas, knowledge and experiences with each other. To keep up this scientific temper with a focus on our young dynamic chest physicians of today, NCCP(I) launched the first (inaugural) issue (January – June 2020) of its Newsletter, the NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin, dedicated to the theme “Pulmonary Hypertension”, which was received with unparalleled excitement and enthusiasm by all members and fellows of our fraternity. We are privileged to launch this second issue (July – December 2020), dedicated to the theme “Pulmonary Function Tests” during the inaugural function of NAPCON 2020 (Virtual), the 22nd Joint National Conference on Pulmonary Diseases of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) and Indian Chest Society, organised for the very first time as a virtual conference due to the prevalent situation caused by the COVID-19 pandemic.

Besides providing a platform for interaction with all our colleagues, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin also aims to update our knowledge and keep us acquainted with current events of interest in Pulmonary Medicine through articles written by senior colleagues as well as young experts across the length and breadth of India, from Kashmir to Kanyakumari and Dwarka to Dibrugarh for a truly national outlook. Each issue is bifurcated into two sections, a general section for information about NCCP(I) and its activities as well as other developments in our field, followed by a specific section dedicated to one disease or area of interest in Pulmonary Medicine with technical information about basic sciences supplemented by interesting real-life case reports to ensure a unique amalgamation of knowledge, experience and skill. Lung Bulletin is meticulously compiled with an integrated and systematic approach to ensure that every issue is unique, with the ultimate goal of providing a comprehensive all-in-one review and up-to-date source of information on the subject to the reader. NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin is being regularly published on a biennial basis with the aim to make it a highly popular and sought after publication.

I take this opportunity to express my gratitude to the National College of Chest Physicians (India) for entrusting me with the responsibility of compiling and publishing NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin. I am personally grateful for the unconditional support and encouragement extended by the Governing Council of NCCP(I), particularly Prof. Dr. P. D. Motiani (President), Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur (Secretary) and Prof. Dr. S. K. Katiyar (Chairman, Scientific Committee and Academic Forum) as well as all our Members and Fellows. I thank our authors and contributors for being accessible, enthusiastic, cooperative and supportive like a family throughout this endeavour. Lastly, I place on record the personal feedback and appreciation given by everyone in support of our endeavour which made it possible for us to publish Lung Bulletin in the most scientific and professional manner. I am confident we will together succeed in driving Lung Bulletin to greater heights to propel the ever-expanding future of Pulmonary Medicine in our country.

The enormous task of organising the 22nd NAPCON 2020, for the very first time, on a Virtual Platform, for five days from 27th to 31st January 2021, has been entrusted to our team. In the limited time available we have worked round-the-clock to put together a state-of-the-art Scientific Programme, rich in academic content, exceptional in diversity and expertise of faculty in the wide arena of Pulmonary Medicine and Allied Sciences designed to change the perspective of our day-to-day clinical practice. For the very first time the Workshops and Scientific Programme will witness the participation of 119 international faculty, deputed from 21 different international Chest associations, apart from 460 national faculty. The keen interest and enthusiasm to participate in NAPCON 2020 are palpable, as evidenced by the overwhelming figures of 4321 delegate registrations and 1002 abstracts submitted for presentation, an unprecedented record in the history of NAPCON. The theme of NAPCON 2020, “Preparing Together for a Better Future”, reflects not only contemporary health dynamics but also the need to remain vigilant and stay safe, always. We understand the crucial role we have to play in the dissemination of scientific knowledge, as well as the advocacy of COVID-19, pneumococcal and influenza vaccination. NAPCON, through its promotion of education, research, advocacy, communication, scientific enlightenment and social mobilization, will continue to guide its participating members throughout this “New Norm”. As the Organising Secretary, I welcome all of You to NAPCON 2020.

I have always cherished the importance of the ‘personal touch’, be it while editing Lung Bulletin, organising NAPCON 2020 and 2016, coordinating NCCP(I) PG quiz and other academic activities and welcome inputs from all of You, whether you happen to be post-graduate medical students, teachers or practising consultants in the field of Pulmonary Medicine to take Lung Bulletin to greater heights. Please feel free to write to me at ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com.

Wish You All Pleasant Reading !

MEMBER'S CORNER (NATIONAL)



I consider it my privilege to share my message in NCCP(I) News Letter and I thank Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar for giving me the opportunity. Updation is a mandatory requirement in the medical field and there is no better platform for this than learning from the experience and views of stalwarts. The News Letter will serve as a treasure house of information and rapid reference module for the practising clinician. Devoting each issue of the News Letter to a focused arena in pulmonary medicine allows for in-depth understanding and refreshing of the basic concepts topped by recent advances. I am sure that, with guidance from the senior teachers in NCCP(I) like Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur, Prof. Dr. S. K. Katiyar and others, Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar will ensure this News Letter to be a concise learning forum appreciated by consultants and trainees alike. I wish the NCCP(I) News Letter all success.

Dr. Rajesh Venkat

**Sr. Consultant and Head, Department of Pulmonary Medicine, Rajagiri hospital, Kochi, Kerala
Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2019**



NCCP (I), a national academic body, has constantly aimed to achieve academic brilliance by means of journal, conferences and now the News Letter. It was a proud privilege for me to contribute an article for the inaugural issue of NCCP(I) News Letter. I am extremely happy to learn that the second issue of NCCP(I) News Letter is going to be released. It will be dedicated to *Pulmonary Function Tests* and will have contributions from various experts in the field of respiratory medicine from all over the country. I wish the Editorial board all the success and congratulate in this academic endeavour. I am sure, under the dynamic leadership of Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar, the News Letter will continue to grow and evolve.

Dr. Pranav Ish

**Assistant Professor - Pulmonary, Critical care & Sleep Medicine,
VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi**



I am very happy to learn that the second News Letter of National College of Chest Physicians (India) focused on Pulmonary function tests has come out. Teaching and learning go hand in hand. It's a great initiative by NCCP(I) especially for the young pulmonologists for learning and training. I was also very happy and lucky as well to be a part of the inaugural issue of NCCP(I) News Letter. I am very sure that under the able leadership of Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar and the NCCP(I) editorial team, this News Letter series will be a huge success and will guide and teach everyone in their routine practice.

Dr. Piyush Arora

**Assistant Professor, Department of TB and Respiratory Diseases,
JLN medical college, Ajmer, Rajasthan**

MEMBER'S CORNER (INTERNATIONAL)

Dear Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar,

It is heartening to learn that the National College of Chest Physicians (India) [NCCP(I)] is publishing its Newsletter aimed at updating the professional knowledge of physicians on various respiratory diseases.

National College of Chest Physicians (India) is an Institution exceptional in its diversity and expertise of professionals in the wide arena of Pulmonary Medicine and the NCCP(I) Newsletter is a long-awaited event. I am sure, rather I have a firm belief that the NCCP(I) Newsletter will provide a comprehensive platform to share knowledge among our colleagues and provide updates on Pulmonary Medicine.

It is matter of great honor and privilege to write a message for the first issue of the NCCP(I) Newsletter. I gratefully appreciate your commendable efforts towards this endeavour. As a fellow of NCCP(I), I extend My Heartfelt Congratulations and Best Wishes to You and the Editorial Team in bringing out this Newsletter and Wishing You all the Best on your next project !

**Dr. Narendra Bhatta - Professor & Head, Department of Pulmonary, Critical Care & Sleep Medicine
B. P. Koirala Institute of Health Sciences (BPKIHS), Dharan, Nepal**



Dear Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar,

I am delighted to learn that the National College of Chest Physicians (India) [NCCP(I)] is bringing out its Newsletter aimed at promoting professional collegiality among the clinicians and updating their knowledge about different respiratory illnesses.

I congratulate the Editorial Board for bringing out this newsletter. NCCP(I) has the reputation of being an Outstanding Academy of Pulmonary Medicine. I gratefully remember the academic contents of many NAPCON's organized under NCCP(I) leadership. I am sure that this Newsletter will provide the platform to connect Pulmonary professionals worldwide and provide recent advances and updates occurring in the field of Pulmonology.

I feel honored to write a message for the first issue of the NCCP(I) Newsletter. I send My Best Wishes to You and All Members of the Editorial Board on the occasion of publication of this Newsletter and extend My Greetings !

**Dr. Nisha Keshary Bhatta - Professor & Chair, Division of Neonatology, Department of Pediatrics,
B. P. Koirala Institute of Health Sciences (BPKIHS), Dharan, Nepal**



Dear Colleagues,

As a Fellow of National College of Chest Physicians (India), I feel elated to know that NCCP(I) is going to launch its Newsletter. NCCP(I) is one of the oldest association of Chest Physicians with an outstanding reputation nationally as well as internationally and has played a key role in fostering the growth of many budding Pulmonologists during their professional careers in India and abroad.

The objectives of NCCP(I) Newsletter are many, for one, it will acquaint our colleagues with the academic endeavours and activities of NCCP(I), keep them updated about different respiratory diseases and current events as well as bring us all together on a single platform to exchange views, ideas and achievements for professional growth like a fraternity.

I congratulate NCCP(I) and the Editor, NCCP(I) Newsletter Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar for their efforts in bringing out the first issue, which I am sure will prove to be a very popular publication rich in academic content that will benefit all our colleagues and post-graduate students alike and will acquire an outstanding momentum which will be kept up with subsequent issues dedicated to specific topics. My Best Wishes for the grand success of this novel venture.

**Dr. Vikram Sarbhai - Specialist in Pulmonology, R.A.K. Hospital, United Arab Emirates
Senior Consultant, Pulmonology Critical Care and Sleep Medicine, National Heart Institute, New Delhi**





NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

A PROFESSIONAL SOCIETY
for Continuing Education and Research in
RESPIRATORY DISEASE & ALLIED SCIENCES

NCCP(I) MEMBERSHIP DRIVE

President : Dr. P. D. Motiani

Secretary : Dr. S. N. Gaur

Convenor, Membership drive : Dr. S. K. Katiyar

Co-Convenor, Membership drive : Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar

BECOME A MEMBER TODAY

COMMUNICATE WITH US



www.nccpindia.org



Dr. S. N. Gaur, Gaur Clinic, 130 - A, Patparganj Village, Delhi – 110091



sngaur9@gmail.com , ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com



(+91) 9811271916 , (+91) 9029429015

MEMBERSHIP BENEFITS

1. Discounted Registration for NCCP(I) Members and Fellows at NAPCON.
2. Discounted Course fee for NCCP(I) Comprehensive Pulmonary Medicine E-Course (CPMeC) and NCCP(I) Interventional Pulmonology E-Course (IPeC) [Course Website : <https://chestcourses.org>].
3. Opportunity to participate and present your original research work at national conference (NAPCON) with travel grant for NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur young scientist award.
4. Travel Grant for International Conferences (Rs. 80,000/- for U.S. & Canada & Rs. 60,000/- for other countries) and National Conferences (Rs. 20,000/-) each year.
5. Lifelong subscription to quarterly issues of Indian Journal of Chest Diseases and Allied Sciences, one of the top rated and cited indexed journals of Respiratory Medicine.
6. Lifelong subscription to biennial issues of NCCP(I) Newsletter Lung Bulletin.
7. Lifelong subscription to Directory of Chest Physicians (updated every 5 years).
8. Opportunity to avail of the Prestigious NCCP(I) Fellowship.
9. Opportunity to participate in Research Activities conducted under aegis of NCCP(I).
10. Upgradation of Knowledge and Technical Skills by attending accredited Conferences, Workshops and CME programmes organised under the aegis of NCCP(I).
11. Opportunity to Associate, Collaborate and have One-to-One interaction with the top level practising Clinicians and Researchers in Pulmonary Medicine in India .
12. Vote during Elections and Introduce New Members at Annual General Body Meeting during NAPCON.

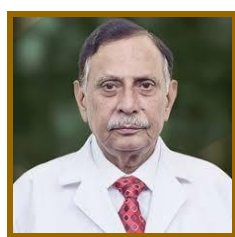
TAKE A TOUR OF OUR WEBSITE www.nccpindia.org



NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA) GOVERNING COUNCIL (2020-2021)



Dr. P. D. Motiani
President (2020-21)



Dr. S. N. Gaur
Secretary (2019-22)
Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2020



Dr. B. O. Tayade
President-Elect (2021-22)



Dr. Surya Kant
Immediate Past President (2019-20)



Lt. Gen. Dr. B.N.B.M. Prasad
Vice-President (2020-21)



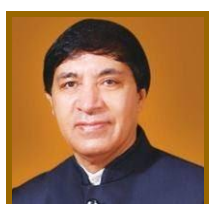
Dr. Raj Bhagat
Joint Secretary (2020-22)



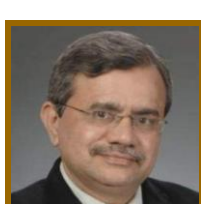
Dr. V. K. Singh
Treasurer (2018-21)



Dr. Raj Kumar
Editor, ICDAS (Director, VPCI)



Dr. J. C. Suri
Zonal Chairman (North)



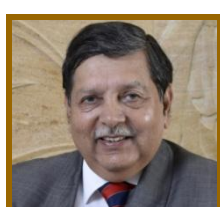
Dr. R. Narasimhan
Zonal Chairman (South)



Dr. Narayan Mishra
Zonal Chairman (East)



Dr. V. K. Jain
Zonal Chairman (West)



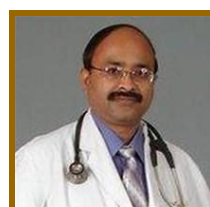
Dr. S. K. Katiyar
Zonal Chairman (Central)



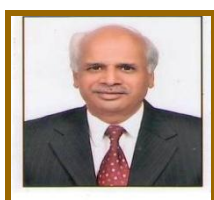
Dr. Rakesh Chawla
Councillor (2019-21)



Dr. Ramakant Dixit
Councillor (2019-21)



Dr. Salil Bhargava
Councillor (2019-21)



Dr. K. B. Gupta
Councillor (2020-22)



Dr. Rajendra Prasad
Councillor (2020-22)



Dr. Gajendra Vikram Singh
Councillor (2020-22)



Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar
Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2020



Dr. S. K. Katiyar
Chairman, Academic Forum



Dr. Rajesh N. Solanki
Member, Academic Forum



Dr. Rajesh Chawla
Member, Academic Forum



Dr. K. B. Gupta
Member, Academic Forum



Dr. Rajesh Chawla
NCCP(I) E-Course Director

E-COURSE HIGHLIGHTS

- ▶ CPMeC has been meticulously prepared by National College of Chest Physicians (India) with the help of Eminent National and International Pulmonology Experts
- ▶ CPMeC is useful for Students as well as Practising Pulmonologists for updating themselves with latest recommendations and standards of care for the management of various respiratory diseases
- ▶ CPMeC consists of 50 online modules to cover all aspects of Pulmonary Medicine over a span of 150 days
- ▶ Each module contains Master Class, Take Home Points, Suggested Reading and Feedback
- ▶ More than 1400 Doctors have successfully enrolled in CPMeC accredited by National Board of Examinations, New Delhi (II-A)
- ▶ NCCP (I) E-Courses will issue online certificate after successful completion of the course

Website - <https://chestcourses.org> Support - <https://support.chestcourses.org> , +91 - 84540 94444

Course Fee : NCCP(I) Members - 4000 INR ; Non-NCCP(I) Members - 6000 INR ; Foreign Nationals - 149 USD



**Interventional
Pulmonology
E-course**



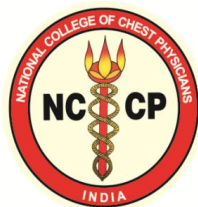
Dr. Rajesh Chawla
NCCP(I) E- Course Director

E-COURSE HIGHLIGHTS

- ▶ Nowadays, Interventional Pulmonology has progressed from simple Bronchoscopy to highly advanced diagnostic and therapeutic Bronchoscopy and Thoracoscopic procedures
- ▶ IPEc has been meticulously prepared by National College of Chest Physicians (India) with the help of Eminent National and International Experts in International Pulmonology
- ▶ IPEc is useful for Students as well as Practising Pulmonologists for to acquaint and update themselves with the skills required to perform a variety of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures including Bronchoscopy, Endobronchial Ultrasound (EBUS), Medical Thoracoscopy, Cryobiopsy, Airway Stenting , Management of Air Leaks and Hemoptysis and Percutaneous Tracheostomy
- ▶ IPEc consists of 30 online modules to cover all aspects of Interventional Pulmonology over a span of 180 days
- ▶ Each module contains Master Class, Take Home Points, Suggested Reading and Feedback
- ▶ NCCP (I) E-Courses will issue online certificate after successful completion of the course

Website - <https://chestcourses.org> Support - <https://support.chestcourses.org> , +91 - 84540 94444

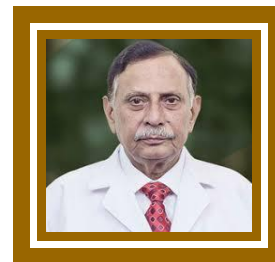
Course Fee : NCCP(I) Members - 4100 INR ; Non-NCCP(I) Members - 6100 INR ; Foreign Nationals - 137 USD



INDIAN GUIDELINES ON NEBULIZATION THERAPY
an educational initiative of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)



Dr. Rajesh Solanki
President, NCCP(I) [2018-19]



Dr. S. N. Gaur
Secretary, NCCP(I)



Dr. S. K. Katiyar
Chairman & Convenor



Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar
Coordinator

Dear Colleagues,

You will be happy to know that we are soon going to publish 'Indian Guidelines on Nebulization Therapy' under the aegis of the National College of Chest Physicians (India). These guidelines are the first of their kind in our country and their compilation a pioneering achievement by the College in the field of Medical Education.

To formulate, compile and publish the Indian Guidelines on Nebulization Therapy under the aegis of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) was the brainchild of Prof. Dr. S. K. Katiyar. The Meeting of Experts for the Indian Guidelines on Nebulization Therapy was convened at Delhi on 3rd and 4th November 2018. A total of 67 Experts in Pulmonary Medicine across India, including members from states like Jammu & Kashmir and Assam were invited to ensure unique pan-Indian representation of ideas, expertise and opinion. Dr. S. K. Katiyar planned and convened the meeting, which was chaired by Dr. Rajesh Solanki [President, NCCP(I), in chair] and Dr. S. N. Gaur [Secretary, NCCP(I), in chair] and coordinated by Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar.

The expert members were allocated into five groups consisting of a Group Convenor, Chairpersons, Advisor and Expert Members to cover different aspects of Nebulization therapy as follows :

1. Group A - Introduction, basic principles and technical aspects of nebulizers, types of equipment, their choice and maintenance.
 2. Group B - Nebulization therapy in obstructive airway diseases
 3. Group C - Nebulization therapy in the intensive care unit
 4. Group D - Use of various drugs (other than bronchodilators & inhaled corticosteroids) by nebulized route and miscellaneous uses of nebulization therapy
 5. Group E - Domiciliary nebulization therapy, public and healthcare workers education and future research
- Five groups were constituted originally, but looking at the present global crisis created due to the pandemic of COVID-19 and consequently the apprehensions and concerns raised by spread of infection through nebulization it was thought to include a sixth group in the expert panel to provide guidance to caregivers while nebulizing patients, as follows :
6. Group F - Nebulization Therapy during COVID-19 pandemic and in patients of other contagious viral respiratory infections

Each group discussed the review of scientific evidence by members with intra-group discussions. Evidence and recommendations were presented by individual groups in the final meeting, for deliberations on the recommendations and arrival of consensus. After the meeting concluded, the guidelines were compiled subsequently groupwise and sent to the Convenor for editing . The edited and refined versions of each group draft was circulated to group members for their final comments prior to publication.

The final document of the Indian Guidelines on Nebulization Therapy under the aegis of NCCP(I) consists of six group drafts compiled after systematic review of evidence in order to cover each and every aspect of Nebulization therapy. The guideline document is meticulously compiled and edited with text, level of evidence and grade of recommendation, abbreviations and references.

It gives us immense pleasure to announce to this effect that the compilation of the Indian Guidelines on Nebulization Therapy under the aegis of NCCP(I) is complete and its publication is under progress. We are sure it will be immensely useful as a source of academic knowledge as well as a reference guide for practitioners, teachers, post-graduate medical students, researchers and healthcare workers in the field of Respiratory Medicine, Internal Medicine and other allied sciences which everyone would like to keep ready on their desk.



INDIAN GUIDELINES ON NEBULIZATION THERAPY
an educational initiative of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

ORGANIZERS

President : Dr. Rajesh Solanki
Convenor & Chairman : Dr. S. K. Katiyar

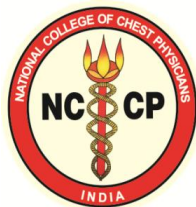
Secretary : Dr. S. N. Gaur
Coordinator : Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar

PARTICIPANTS

Group Convenors					
Dr. J. C. Suri	Dr. Raj Kumar	Dr. G. C. Khilnani	Dr. Dhruva Chaudhry	Dr. Rupak Singla	Dr. Parvaiz Koul
Group Advisors					
Dr. Dhiman Ganguly	Dr. V. K. Vijayan	Dr. Randeep Guleria	Dr. V. K. Arora		
Dr. H. Paramesh	Dr. S. K. Jindal	Dr. P. S. Shankar			
Group Chairpersons					
Dr. S. N. Gaur	Dr. D. Behera	Dr. Rajesh Chawla	Dr. Deepak Talwar	Dr. A. G. Ghoshal	Dr. P. D. Motiani
Dr. D. J. Christopher	Dr. S. K. Luhadia	Dr. Mohan Kumar T	Dr. K. B. Gupta	Dr. Rajesh Solanki	Dr. A. Mahashur
Group Members					
Dr. C. Ravindran	Dr. Narayan Mishra	Dr. R. Narasimhan	Dr. Rajendra Prasad	Dr. J. K. Samaria	
Dr. D. Bhattacharya	Dr. Virendra Singh	Dr. N. T. Awad	Dr. Jogesh Sarma	Dr. Surya Kant	
Dr. S. Chakravarti	Dr. George D'Souza	Dr. R. Vijai Kumar	Dr. P. R. Mohapatra	Dr. Rajesh Swarnakar	
Dr. Anand Jaiswal	Dr. A. K. Janmeja	Dr. Rakesh Chawla	Dr. Mansi Gupta	Dr. Vishal Chopra	
Dr. M. K. Sen	Dr. Naveed Shah	Dr. Vijay Hadda	Dr. Sandeep Katiyar	Dr. Vikas Kumar	
Dr. Rohit Kumar	Dr. Parul Mrigpuri	Dr. Neetu Jain	Dr. Brijesh Prajapat	Dr. Abhishek Faye	
Dr. Amit Kumar	Dr. Sonam Spalgais	Dr. Saurabh Mittal	Dr. Aditya Jindal	Dr. Arunachalam M	
Dr. Viswesvaran B	Dr. Mahendra Kumar	Dr. Pavan Tiwari	Dr. Inderpaul Singh	Dr. Subhadeep Saha	

GROUP PHOTOGRAPHS OF NCCP(I) – INDIAN GUIDELINES ON NEBULIZATION THERAPY

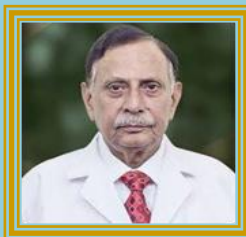




NCCP(I) TEXTBOOK OF RESPIRATORY MEDICINE
a publication of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)



Dr. D. Behera
Editor-in-Chief



Dr. S. N. Gaur
Associate Editor



Dr. S. K. Katiyar
Associate Editor



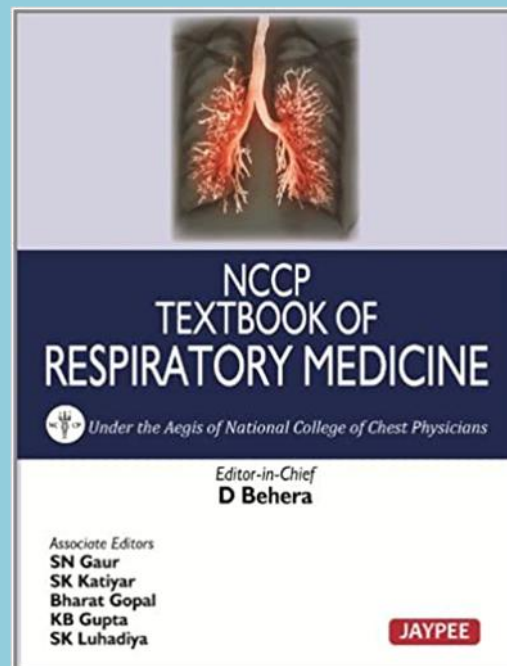
Dr. S. K. Luhadia
Associate Editor



Dr. K. B. Gupta
Associate Editor



Dr. Bharat Gopal
Associate Editor

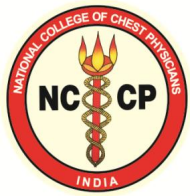


National College of Chest Physicians (India) published Textbook of Respiratory Medicine as part of its continuing educational activities. NCCP(I) Textbook of Respiratory Medicine has been edited by Prof. Dr. D. Behera who has been assisted by five associate editors Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur, Prof. Dr. S. K. Katiyar, Prof. Dr. S. K. Luhadia, Prof. Dr. K. B. Gupta and Dr. Bharat Gopal. This multi-authored textbook contains 41 chapters contributed by senior and experienced authors, both from India and abroad which have been compiled in a single volume so as to provide comprehensive yet concise information on the ever expanding field of respiratory medicine, with special emphasis on the respiratory disorders prevalent in our country. The objective of this book is to address the needs of a diverse audience and become a par- excellent source of information and references for the post-graduate as well as undergraduate medical students as well as serve as a guide to busy practitioners for management of common respiratory illnesses.

NCCP(I) Textbook of Respiratory Medicine begins with an overall review of the respiratory system, including clinical examination, respiratory symptomatology and physiology, followed by a wide array of chapters on diverse topics, taking care to cover all respiratory diseases common to our country. The text is well referenced and lucid in style for better language flow and adequately supplemented by tables, figures and diagrams. Respiratory disorders have been covered according to their prevalence in our country and relevance in clinical practice. Chapters have been well compiled and edited in order to provide updated and relevant information, keeping in mind that the textbook is meant for a diverse readership comprising of post-graduate, undergraduate and post-doctoral medical students of Respiratory and Internal Medicine as well as practicing Chest Physicians. Overall the textbook is well illustrated and informative, a much sought-after valuable addition to the libraries of medical colleges and teaching institutions and has evolved into a highly popular publication as it highlights the current status and updates on various respiratory diseases and their diagnosis and management.

TEXTBOOK CHAPTERS

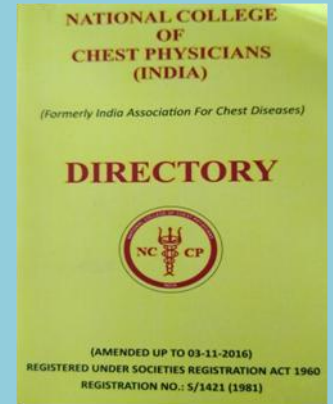
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Physical Examination of Respiratory System | 21. Cor Pulmonale |
| 2. Common Clinical Symptoms | 22. Oxygen Therapy |
| 3. Growth, Development and Morphology of the Respiratory System | 23. Pulmonary Embolism |
| 4. Normal Respiratory Physiology | 24. Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome |
| 5. Defense Mechanisms of the Respiratory System | 25. Lung Cancer |
| 6. Diagnostic Methods in Respiratory System | 26. Pulmonary Neoplasms other than Bronchogenic Carcinoma |
| 7. Interventional Pulmonology & Electromagnetic Navigation | 27. Smoking and Lung Diseases |
| 8. Antimicrobials in Respiratory Medicine | 28. Air Pollution and Respiratory Diseases |
| 9. Pneumonias | 29. Essentials of Polysomnography and Recommendations in Adults |
| 10. Anaerobic Pleuro-pulmonary Infections | 30. Sarcoidosis |
| 11. Parasitic Lung Diseases | 31. Lungs in Collagen Vascular Diseases and other Systemic Diseases |
| 12. Tropical Pulmonary Eosinophilia | 32. Vasculitis and the Lungs |
| 13. Lung Abscess | 33. Interstitial Lung Diseases |
| 14. Bronchiectasis | 34. Occupational Lung Diseases |
| 15. Tuberculosis | 35. Hypersensitivity Pneumonitis |
| 16. Non-tubercular Mycobacterial Diseases | 36. Disorders of the Diaphragm and Chest Wall |
| 17. Bronchial Asthma | 37. Congenital Anomalies of the Respiratory System |
| 18 A. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease | 38. HIV and Respiratory Diseases |
| 18 B. Rehabilitation in Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease | 39. Lung Transplantation |
| 19. Aerosol Therapy | 40. Non-invasive Ventilation in Acute Respiratory Failure |
| 20. Respiratory Failure | 41. Pleural Diseases |



NATIONAL DIRECTORY OF CHEST PHYSICIANS
a publication of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)



Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur
Secretary, NCCP (I)
Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2020
Professor & Head, Department of TB & Respiratory Diseases,
School of Medical Sciences & Research, Sharda University,
Greater Noida, NCR Delhi
Former Director (Acting), Vallabhbhai Patel Chest Institute, Delhi
Recipient of 12 awards & honours & Commonwealth Fellowship
Chairman, Allergen Standardization Committee, Govt. of India
E-mail : sngaur9@gmail.com



Dear Colleagues,

You are very well aware that National College of Chest Physicians (India) publishes a National Directory of Chest Physicians in India every five years, with the objective of providing contact details of all Chest Physicians across the country. The last NCCP(I) Directory was published in 2016. We thank all members and fellows of NCCP(I) and request You to inform us in case of any change of residential, official or postal address, mobile number and E-mail ID in order for us to prepare the forthcoming Directory, for which You can fill up the Directory Entry Form in this Newsletter and send by post to the NCCP(I) secretariat address below (or download from our website www.nccpindia.org and send by E-mail to sngaur9@gmail.com).

We also welcome all to submit their plans for events and activities for the forthcoming year. In addition, we would like to ensure You are aware of all your NCCP(I) membership benefits , which include :

- ▶ Electronic Voting for Yearly Elections to NCCP(I) Governing Council through E-voting form sent to Your E-mail ID
- ▶ Subscription to Indian Journal of Chest Diseases and Allied Sciences (Quarterly issues)
- ▶ NCCP(I) National Directory of Chest Physicians (Every 5 years)
- ▶ Discounts in Registration for NCCP(I) E-Courses (CPMeC & IPeC)
- ▶ Discounts in Registration for participating at National Conferences (including NAPCON), International Conferences (Gulf-Thoracic and others), State Conferences and Workshops and other educational activities under the aegis of NCCP(I)
- ▶ Travel Grants for National & International Conferences
- ▶ Communications through E-mail and Invitation to attend NCCP(I) Annual General Body Meeting
- ▶ Access to NCCP(I) Newsletter – Lung Bulletin (Biennial issues starting from this year)

Should You need any assistance or have any queries regarding Your NCCP(I) Membership or Benefits, please feel free to contact us, our support is always available to help You.

COMMUNICATE WITH US



www.nccpindia.org



Dr. S. N. Gaur, Gaur Clinic, 130 - A, Patparganj Village, Delhi – 110091



sngaur9@gmail.com , ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com



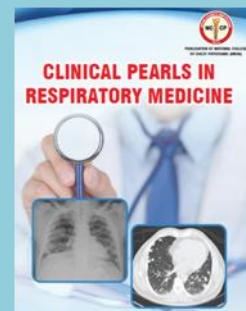
(+91) 9811271916 , (+91) 9029429015



CLINICAL PEARLS IN RESPIRATORY MEDICINE
a publication of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)



Dr. Vishnu Sharma M
Editor, NCCP(I) Clinical Pearls in Respiratory Medicine
Professor and Head, Department of Respiratory medicine
A. J. Institute of Medical sciences & Research Centre
Kuntikana, Mangalore, Karnataka
E-mail : drvishnusharmag@gmail.com

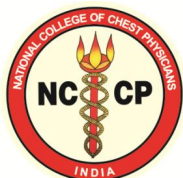


Dear Colleagues,

My observations and experience since last two decades as postgraduate teacher has led to writing a book. Primary aim of the book is to make the beginners in respiratory medicine to understand the basic concepts in a simple way. The book has three sections – interactive case discussions, discussion on chest images and multiple choice questions. One can easily understand the topics as I have tried to present the discussion in interesting way with clinical touch. One can self-assess using the discussions and MCQs.

I express my sincere gratitude to Professor Dr. S. N. Gaur, Honorary Secretary, NCCP(I) for suggesting me to write this book and constantly encouraging me in the process. My sincere gratitude to Professor Dr. P. D. Motiani, President, NCCP(I), for his guidance. I express my sincere gratitude to Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar, Organizing Secretary, NAPCON 2020 for his help in bringing out this book. I am indebted to NCCP(I) for releasing the book during NAPCON 2020 from January 27-31, 2021. My sincere gratitude to my teacher Prof. Dr. V. K. Arora who has been a guide in my academic career.

I also express my gratitude to all who have contributed and helped me in compiling this book. My sincere thanks to all the Past and present post-graduates in our department who helped me in compiling this book, especially in collecting the images and patient details.



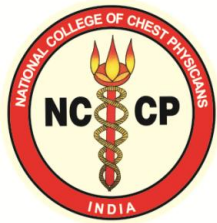
TEXTBOOK OF EMERGENCIES IN RESPIRATORY MEDICINE
an upcoming publication of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)



Prof. Dr. Narayan Mishra
Editor-in-Chief, NCCP(I) Textbook of Emergencies in Respiratory Medicine
Zonal Chairman (East Zone), National College of Chest Physicians (India)
Former Professor & Head, Dept. of Pulmonary Medicine, MKCG medical college, Berhampur
Former President, National College of Chest Physicians(India) (2015-16) & Indian Chest Society (2011-12)
E-mail : doctor_narayan@yahoo.com

Dear Colleagues,

You will be happy to know that we are going to bring out soon a textbook on 'Emergencies in Respiratory Medicine' under the aegis of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) which will be published by Jaypee Brothers. This book is the first of its kind and an excellent step taken by the College in the field of Medical Education. It contains several chapters written by pioneering experts in the field of Respiratory Medicine of our vast country. An attempt has been made to cover each and every aspect of Respiratory Emergencies. Each chapter is meticulously written and edited with abstract, key words, introduction and description of the topic including information on diseases and conditions along with references. It's our immense pleasure to announce to this effect the work of compilation is under progress. We are sure it will be immensely useful as a source of academic and clinical knowledge for practitioners, teachers, post-graduate medical students and researchers in the field of Respiratory Medicine and other allied sciences which everyone would like to keep ready and have with them.



NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

NCCP(I) - TRAVEL GRANT FOR CONFERENCES

NCCP(I) - PROF. Dr. S. N. GAUR'S YOUNG SCIENTIST AWARD

- ▶ The American Thoracic Society (ATS) and American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) have agreed to the nomination of 2 delegates as representatives of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) to attend and participate in their annual conferences. These NCCP(I) nominees (Fellows only) will be provided complimentary registration and local accommodation by the Organizers. Travel has to be arranged by the nominees themselves.
- ▶ In addition, NCCP(I) is providing travel grant worth a fixed amount to its Members and Fellows for participation in national* and international conferences* as follows :
 - Rs. 20,000/- for national conferences in India*
 - Rs. 80,000/- for international conferences in U.S. & Canada
 - Rs. 60,000/- for international conferences in other countries
- ▶ Those NCCP(I) Fellows or Members interested, can apply to Hon. Secretary, NCCP(I), preferably before March each year (as ATS conference is usually held in May and ACCP annual meeting in October of the calendar year) for consideration providing details on a request letter as follows :

CHECK-LIST

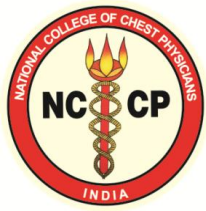
- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. Name, Dates and Venue of conference | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Details of Participation in the concerned conference (Delegate/Faculty) | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Letter of Abstract Acceptance or Invitation at the concerned conference | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Applicant Particulars
(Full name, age in years, gender, Postal address, E-mail ID & Mobile number for communication) | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Present designation/affiliation | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. NCCP(I) Life Fellowship (LF) or Life Membership (LM) number | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. Number of NAPCONs attended in last 5 years | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. Number of total conferences (national + international) attended in last 5 years | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9. Number of publications in last 5 years (attach list) | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10. Forwarding letter preferably signed by Head of Department or Institution or a Fellow of NCCP(I) | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 11. Hard copies of receipts for reimbursement (Registration, Travel, Stay) with breakup of expenses | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 12. Disclaimer or statement whether availing travel grant/other monetary assistance from any other source for the same | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- ▶ The grant applications should be sent by post addressed to Hon. Secretary, NCCP(I) at the following address :
Dr. S. N. Gaur , Gaur Clinic, 130- A, Patparganj Village, Delhi – 110091. Phone : +91- 9811271916
E-mail : sngaur9@gmail.com
- ▶ All applicant requests will be scrutinized by a Credential committee at NCCP(I) Governing Council meeting, for those selected, expenses as per norms will be reimbursed by postal cheque in the name of the applicant only.

▶ **NCCP(I) – Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur's Young Scientist Award at NAPCON***

- The applicant should not be more than 35 years of age and first author of the abstract submitted for oral presentation at NAPCON mentioning selection for NCCP(I) – Prof. S. N. Gaur Young Scientist award.
- All abstracts forwarded by the NAPCON for NCCP(I) – Prof. S. N. Gaur Young Scientist Award will be scrutinized by an Academic Committee specially constituted by NCCP(I) for this purpose . A maximum of 9 abstracts will be selected for presentation in this award session and the presenters informed accordingly prior to the conference.
- All selected presenters will receive Rs. 5000/- as travel grant by cheque and a certificate of presentation, in addition to certificates and award adjudged for the First, Second and Third prizes.

** For NAPCON, NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur's Young Scientist Award is available for Young Scientists.
NAPCON Registration is Discounted for All Life Members and Fellows of NCCP(I) and ICS.*



POST-GRADUATE QUIZ IN RESPIRATORY DISEASES 2019
an academic initiative of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

For all medical students, continuing medical education (CME) programmes, seminars, updates, workshops and conferences form an integral part of their training apart from the bedside clinical teaching, ward rounds and lectures imparted at medical colleges or teaching institutions. Quiz competition comes as a refreshing change from all these academic activities to enhance and fine-tune their learning and it is something they look forward to with excitement and enthusiasm. To encourage and recognize the budding potential in our Chest Physicians of tomorrow, National College of Chest Physicians (India) undertook the initiative to conduct Post-graduate Quiz Competition in Respiratory diseases with the objective to promote scientific temper in PG students of Pulmonary medicine in India, state-wise as well as nationally.

The NCCP(I) State PG quiz in Respiratory diseases was organised in 15 states at medical colleges/teaching institutions, keeping nationally renowned faculty in Pulmonary medicine as state PG quiz anchors. The first two winners in order of merit in each state were awarded NCCP(I) prize certificate and a cash award of Rs. 5000/- each, with a certificate of participation distributed to all participants. The NCCP(I) State PG quiz programme was a grand success, with a record participation of 290 PG students from different states across the country.

To keep up and carry forward this scientific temper, it was necessary to create a national academic platform to acknowledge and reward this young talent identified among PG students of Pulmonology at state level. Keeping this objective in mind, National College of Chest Physicians (India) organised an All-India PG quiz competition in Respiratory diseases for the first time in our country. Members of the winning team (2 students) from each state were provided a scholarship to participate in the All-India PG quiz with arrangements for accommodation and air travel. All 30 students confirmed their participation and attended the NCCP(I) All-India PG quiz.

The NCCP(I) All-India PG quiz was conducted on Saturday, 21st December 2019 during the 74th National Conference of TB & Chest diseases from 5:00 to 7:15 p.m. at Hotel Leela Palace, Chennai. Dr. Vishnu Sharma, Professor & Head, Department of Respiratory medicine, A J institute of medical sciences, Mangalore was invited to be the National Quiz Master. The PG quiz was inaugurated by Dr. S. N. Gaur (Secretary), Dr. S. K. Katiyar (Chairman, Academic Forum) and Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar (Coordinator) from NCCP(I) who welcomed all PG students and congratulated them for standing first in the PG quiz in their respective states. After wishing all success, the quiz programme was outlined by Dr. Vishnu Sharma. The preliminary round consisted of 42 multiple choice questions (MCQs) given to all participants to be answered within 20 minutes, at the end of which all answer sheets were collected and each question transparently discussed along with the answer by powerpoint presentation through on-screen display. The individual scores of both students in each team in the preliminary round were combined to compute the final score of each team. The team members from Delhi, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Kerala scored the highest in the preliminary round and were selected to participate in the grand round on stage with a buzzer in front. Coordination of each team and functioning of audio-visuals were cross-checked twice and verified with each team before the grand round commenced. 9 rounds of question-answer sessions with first-best answer type pattern were conducted, the answers being discussed at the end of each session. A maximum interval of 5 seconds between pressing the buzzer to answering the question by the respective team was permitted. 10 marks were awarded for correct answers, with negative marking of 5 marks for wrong answers to the respective team. The teams from Delhi, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Kerala scored 55, 25, 10 and 35 marks respectively and were congratulated for their performance in the grand round.

For the award ceremony Dr. V. K. Arora, Vice-Chairman, TB association of India and Past-President of NCCP(I) was invited to the dias along with Dr. S. N. Gaur, Dr. S. K. Katiyar, Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar and Dr. Vishnu Sharma. The first prize carried NCCP(I) prize certificate, cheque of Rs. 25000/- each and plaque of "D.B. Gupta budding talent award" and was awarded to Dr. Tanmay Jain and Dr. Arunachalam from Delhi. The second prize carried NCCP(I) prize certificate and cheque of Rs. 15000/- each and was awarded to Dr. Mahroofa EV and Dr. Archana LP from Kerala. The third prize carried NCCP(I) prize certificate and cheque of Rs. 10000/- each and was awarded to Dr. Amal Johnson and Dr. Vaseema Tabassum from Tamil Nadu. All winners and participants were congratulated.

As a token of appreciation, a certificate of participation from NCCP(I) was personally awarded to all 30 PG students, with congratulations for their efforts and best wishes for their future. A special certificate of appreciation was awarded to Dr. Vishnu Sharma on behalf of NCCP(I) for his efforts towards conducting the NCCP(I) All-India PG quiz in a highly transparent and professional manner.

State	PG Quiz Anchor(s)	Venue of State PG Quiz	Winning Team	
			Names	Institute
Delhi	Dr. Vivek Nangia	Fortis Hospital, Vasant Kunj, New Delhi	Dr. Arunachalam Dr. Tanmay Jain	NITRD, Delhi Metro hospital, Noida
Gujarat	Dr. Savita Jindal Dr. Sanjay Tripathi	LG Hospital, Ahmedabad	Dr. Palak Bhatt Dr. Trupti Gadhavi	Ahmedabad municipal corporation MET medical college, Ahmedabad
Haryana	Dr. Dhruva Chaudhry	PGIMS, Rohtak	Dr. Sameer Kotalwar Dr. Ankit Aggarwal	Medanta hospital - the medicity, Gurgaon
Himachal Pradesh	Dr. Malay Sarkar	Indira Gandhi medical college, Shimla	Dr. Swadesh Mohanty Dr. Aseem Sirkeck	Indira Gandhi medical college, Shimla
Karnataka	Dr. Shashi Bhushan	PMSY Super Specialty block, Victoria hospital, Bengaluru	Dr. Rashmitha MT Dr. Parvathy Pillai	Bangalore medical college & research institute, Bengaluru
Kerala	Dr. Kiran Vishnu Narayan	Indraprastha hotel, Kottayam	Dr. Mahroofa EV Dr. Archana LP	Institute of Chest diseases, Government medical college, Kozhikode
Maharashtra	Dr. Sushant Meshram	Government medical college, Nagpur	Dr. Alina Alexander Dr. Abhishek Singh	Government medical college, Nagpur
Odisha	Dr. Narayan Mishra	Hotel Spectrum, Berhampur	Dr. Biswajit Pati Dr. Saurabh Gupta	VIMSAR med. college, Burla KIMS, Bhubaneswar
Puducherry	Dr. S. Yuvarajan	SMV medical college & hospital, Puducherry	Dr. Naren Chandra Dr. Selvaraja	JIPMER, Pondicherry
Punjab	Dr. Vishal Chopra	Government medical college, Patiala	Dr. Leena Chopra Dr. Jain Thomas	Government medical college, Patiala
Tamil Nadu	Dr. V. Vinod Kumar	Government hospital of Thoracic Medicine, Tambaram, Chennai	Dr. Amal Johnson Dr. Vaseema Thabassum	Apollo hospital, Chennai
Telangana	Dr. Sailaja K Dr. R. Vijai Kumar	Mediciti institute of medical sciences, Hyderabad	Dr. Lavanya K Dr. Govardhan Reddy	Mediciti institute of medical sciences, Hyderabad
Uttar Pradesh	Dr. Surya Kant	King George medical university, Lucknow	Dr. Shiv Kumar Verma Dr. Vignesh K	King George medical university, Lucknow
Uttarakhand	Dr. Girish Sindhwani	AIIMS Rishikesh	Dr. Kumar Nishant Dr. Sandeep Kumar	Himalayan institute of medical sciences, Dehradun
West Bengal	Dr. Shelley Shamim	Calcutta National medical college, Kolkata	Dr. Riksoam Chatterjee Dr. D Suresh Kumar	IPGMER & SSKM medical college, Kolkata

Report of NCCP(I) State PG Quiz in Respiratory Diseases 2019



Dr. Vishnu Sharma
Quiz Master, NCCP(I) All-India PG Quiz in Respiratory Diseases
Professor & Head, Department of Respiratory medicine,
A. J. Institute of Medical sciences & Research Centre, Kuntikana, Mangalore, Karnataka
E-mail : drvishnusharmag@gmail.com

Quiz is basically a form of mind sport, in which the players (as individuals or in teams) attempt to answer questions correctly. The word "Quiz" may have originated in student slang and it means to "test knowledge". Quiz is used in education to test knowledge, abilities or skills of individuals. I have been conducting quiz for respiratory medicine post-graduate students since the last ten years. Post-graduate quiz during a conference with provision of scholarship to meritorious students always generates a lot of excitement, with all students participating enthusiastically. While compiling quiz questions emphasis is laid on must-know facts for the students. A properly conducted quiz with academic focus helps to enhance post-graduate learning. It was a great honour for me to be invited by the National College of Chest Physicians (India) as the Quiz Master to conduct their All-India level quiz for PG students of respiratory medicine. The NCCP(I) All-India PG quiz programme at Chennai was a grand academic success and succeeded in achieving its objective of promoting scientific temper and identifying young talent from the budding post-graduates, who are one day going to be the future of Pulmonary Medicine in our country.

PHOTOGRAPHS OF NCCP(I) STATE PG QUIZ 2019



DELHI



GUJARAT



HARYANA



HIMACHAL PRADESH



KARNATAKA



KERALA



MAHARASHTRA



ODISHA



PUDUCHERRY



PUNJAB



TAMIL NADU



TELANGANA



UTTAR PRADESH



UTTARAKHAND



WEST BENGAL

PHOTOGRAPHS OF NCCP(I) ALL – INDIA PG QUIZ 2019



A



B



C



D



E



F



G. GROUP PHOTOGRAPH

A. Dr. Vishnu Sharma (Quiz Master) addressing all participants

B & C. Teams qualifying for Grand Round

B. Dr. Arunachalam & Dr. Tanmay Jain (Delhi), Dr. Amal Johnson & Dr. Vaseema Thabassum (Tamil Nadu)

C. Dr. Parvathy Pillai & Dr. Rashmitha MT (Karnataka), Dr. Archana EV & Dr. Mahroofa LP (Kerala)

D. Award of 1st Prize to Dr. Arunachalam & Dr. Tanmay Jain

E. Award of 2nd Prize to Dr. Archana EV & Dr. Mahroofa LP

F. Award of 3rd Prize to Dr. Amal Johnson & Dr. Vaseema Thabassum

G. Group photograph of All participants, Quiz Master – Dr. Vishnu Sharma, Dr. V. K. Arora, and

NCCP(I) team – Dr. S. N. Gaur (Secretary), Dr. S. K. Katiyar (Chair, Scientific Committee) and Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar (Coordinator)



POST-GRADUATE QUIZ IN RESPIRATORY DISEASES 2020 (VIRTUAL)
an academic initiative of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

Due to the situation caused by COVID-19 pandemic, with restrictions on travel and gathering, the NCCP(I) State PG Quiz in Respiratory diseases for 2020 was organised for the very first time, on a Virtual Quiz platform. To keep up the academic enthusiasm in times with the challenging scenario, it was decided to organise the PG Quiz virtually. A unique virtual platform for the quiz was designed and tested and after several trial runs, was finalised in December 2020.

The NCCP(I) State level post-graduate quiz was organised in 22 states (up from 15 states in 2019) virtually, keeping nationally renowned faculty in Pulmonary medicine as state PG quiz anchors. Before each state quiz, a trial run and mock demonstration with the Participants and Quiz Anchors was conducted, to ensure smooth and glitch-free conduction. The first two winners in order of merit in each state were awarded NCCP(I) prize certificate and prize money of Rs. 5000/- and Rs. 2500/- respectively, with a certificate of participation distributed to all participants. The NCCP(I) State PG quiz programme was a grand success, with a record participation of 526 PG students from different states across the country, up from 290 students the previous year.

To give an impetus to the scientific temper and encourage the qualifying participants at state level, National College of Chest Physicians (India) organised the All-India PG quiz competition in Respiratory diseases on a virtual platform at NAPCON 2020, the 22nd Joint National Conference of Pulmonary Diseases of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) and Indian Chest Society. The two winners from each state quiz were invited to participate in the NCCP(I) NAPCON All-India PG quiz and all 40 PG students confirmed their participation. Dr. Vishnu Sharma, Professor & Head, Department of Respiratory medicine, A J institute of medical sciences, Mangalore was invited to be the National Quiz Master with Dr. Rajesh Venkat, Professor & Head, Department of Pulmonary medicine, Rajagiri institute of medical sciences, Kochi as the Co-Quiz Master. A trial run was organised with the Quiz Anchors and participants on 24th January 2020 to avoid technical glitches and ensure smooth and hassle-free conduction of the All-India Quiz programme.

The NCCP(I) All-India PG quiz was conducted virtually on Saturday, 30th January 2021 during NAPCON 2020 in Hall F from 3:00 to 5:00 p.m. The quiz was inaugurated by Dr. P. D. Motiani (President), Dr. S. N. Gaur (Secretary), Dr. S. K. Katiyar (Chairman, Academic Forum) and Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar (Coordinator) from NCCP(I). After wishing all success to the participants, the quiz programme was outlined by the Quiz Masters, and coordination and functioning of audio-visuals and virtual platform were cross-checked and verified prior to commencement. The quiz being entirely virtual, keeping in mind the technical issues, the qualifying post-graduates were encouraged to participate individually this time, rather than as a team. 64 single-best response type multiple choice questions, divided equally between both Quiz Masters were flashed on-screen in turn to all participants. After participant response, the answers were discussed at the end of each question, with the participant who provided the first correct answer being awarded the most points. After participants response, each question was discussed single The first prize carried NCCP(I) prize certificate, award of Rs. 25000/- and plaque of "D.B. Gupta budding talent award" and was awarded to Dr. Suyash Singh Rathore from AIIMS Rishikesh, Uttarakhand who scored 13 points. The second prize carried NCCP(I) prize certificate and award of Rs. 15000/- and was awarded to Dr. Archit Krishna Manohar from Madurai medical college, Madurai, Tamil Nadu who scored 11 points. The third prize carried NCCP(I) prize certificate and award of Rs. 10000/- and was awarded to Dr. Amruta Peter from Netaji Subhas Chandra Bose medical college, Jabalpur, Madhya Pradesh who scored 7 points. All the winners and participants were congratulated.

As a token of appreciation, an E-certificate of participation from NCCP(I) was awarded to all 42 PG students, with congratulations for their efforts and best wishes for their future. A special certificate of appreciation was awarded to Dr. Vishnu Sharma and Dr. Rajesh Venkat on behalf of NCCP(I) for their efforts towards conducting the NCCP(I) All-India PG quiz in a transparent and professional manner.

State	PG Quiz Anchor(s)	Winners	
		Name	Institute
Andhra Pradesh & Telangana	Dr. Alladi Mohan	Dr. Kunal Waghray	SVS medical college, Mahabubnagar
		Dr. Allampati B Sree Sowmya	Kurnool medical college, Kurnool
Bihar & Jharkhand	Dr. Saurabh Karmakar	Dr. Priya Sharma	AIIMS, Patna
		Dr. Sanket Joshi	Himalayan institute of medical sciences, Patna
Delhi	Dr. Vivek Nangia	Dr. Vatsal Bhushan Gupta	Vallabhbai Patel Chest institute, Delhi
		Dr. Rishi Kumar Mangal	Sir Ganga Ram hospital, Delhi
Gujarat	Dr. Savita Jindal Dr. Amit Dedun Dr. Vishakha Kapadia	Dr. Khusboo Chahwala	GMERS medical college & hospital, Vadodara
		Dr. Richa Udhvani	GMERS medical college & hospital, Vadodara
Haryana	Dr. Dhruva Chaudhry	Dr. Vishal Raj	PGIMS, Rohtak
		Dr. Ayush Pandey	SGT medical college & hospital, Gurugram
Himachal Pradesh	Dr. Malay Sarkar	Dr. Aseem Sirkeck	Indira Gandhi medical college, Shimla
		Dr. Anurag Tripathi	Indira Gandhi medical college, Shimla
Kashmir	Dr. Naveed Shah	Dr. Mir Shahnawaz	Government medical college, Srinagar
		Dr. Saurabh Ojha	Government medical college, Srinagar
Karnataka	Dr. Shashi Bhushan	Dr. Ningappa	Sapthagiri institute of medical sciences, Bengaluru
		Dr. Megha Leo	A.J. institute of medical sciences, Mangalore
Kerala	Dr. P. S. Shahjahan	Dr. Anand Vijay	Rajagiri medical college & hospital, Kochi
		Dr. Aswathy G.	Cosmopolitan hospital, Thiruvananthapuram
Madhya Pradesh	Dr. Trinath Dash	Dr. Amruta Peter	NSCB medical college, Jabalpur
		Dr. Pournami	NSCB medical college, Jabalpur
Chhatisgarh	Dr. Trinath Dash	Dr. Karthik Tipparapu	J.L.N. hospital and research centre, Bhilai
		Dr. Riju Sanjay Desai	J.L.N. hospital and research centre, Bhilai
Maharashtra	Dr. Sushant Meshram	Dr. Sanket Agarwal	Government medical college, Nagpur
		Dr. Robin Choudhary	Cardio-thoracic centre, AFMC Pune
Odisha	Dr. Narayan Mishra	Dr. Kinshuk Sarbhai	KIIMS Bhubaneswar
		Dr. Jeeshita Mariam Reddy	KIIMS Bhubaneswar
Puducherry	Dr. S. Yuvarajan	Dr. Vinayak Nandhanan	SMV medical college & hospital, Puducherry
		Dr. K. Prathaban	SMV medical college & hospital, Puducherry
Punjab	Dr. Vishal Chopra	Dr. Karan Sharma	Government medical college, Patiala
		Dr. Amritpal Kaur	SGRD institute of medical sciences, Amritsar
Rajasthan	Dr. Rajendra Takhar	Dr. Sumit Kumar Jain	SMS medical college, Jaipur
		Dr. Sethuraman M	RNT medical college, Udaipur
Tamil Nadu	Dr. V. Vinod Kumar	Dr. Archit Krishna Manohar	Madurai medical college, Madurai
		Dr. Mathew Varghese	Christian medical college, Vellore
Uttar Pradesh	Dr. Surya Kant	Dr. Anil Maurya	Dr. SPM civil hospital, Lucknow
		Dr. Shubham Jain	Rohilkhand medical college, Bareilly
Uttarakhand	Dr. Girish Sindhvani	Dr. Prateek Gupta	Shri Mahant Indiresh hospital, Dehradun
		Dr. Suyash Singh Rathore	AIIMS, Dehradun
West Bengal	Dr. Shelley Shamim	Dr. Riksoam Chatterjee	IPGMER & SSKM medical college, Kolkata
		Dr. Soumyadeep Ghosh	Medical college, Kolkata

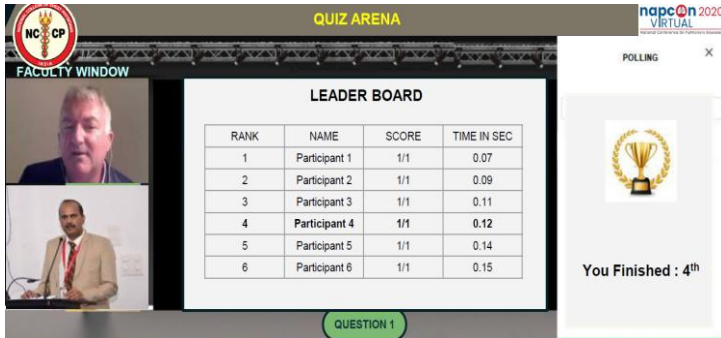
PHOTOGRAPHS OF NCCP(I) STATE AND ALL – INDIA VIRTUAL PG QUIZ 2020



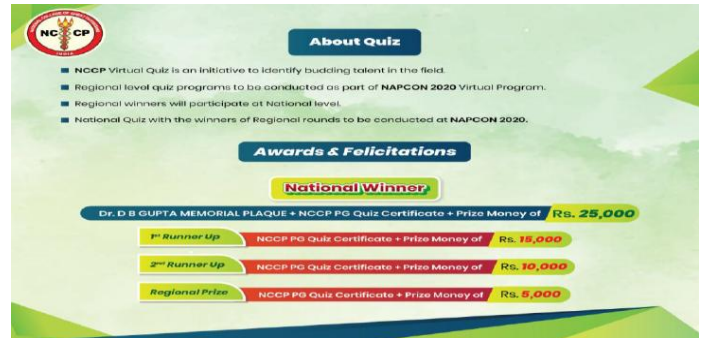
NCCP(I) Virtual PG Quiz Platform – Outer Fascia



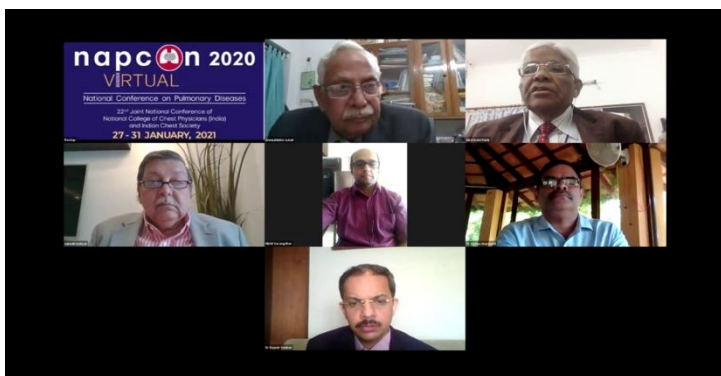
NCCP(I) Virtual PG Quiz Platform – Lobby



NCCP(I) Virtual PG Quiz Platform – Score & Ranking



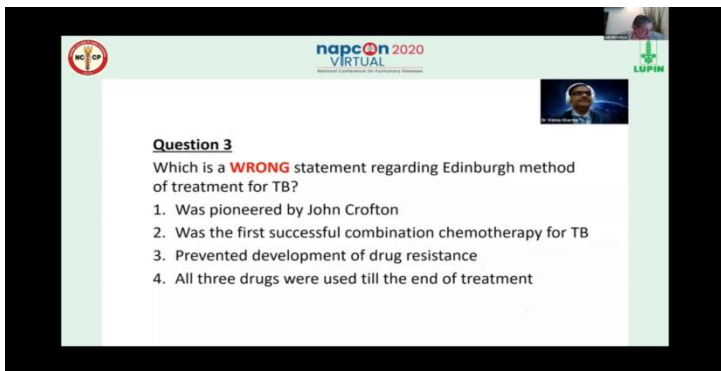
NCCP(I) Virtual PG Quiz Platform – Prize Notification



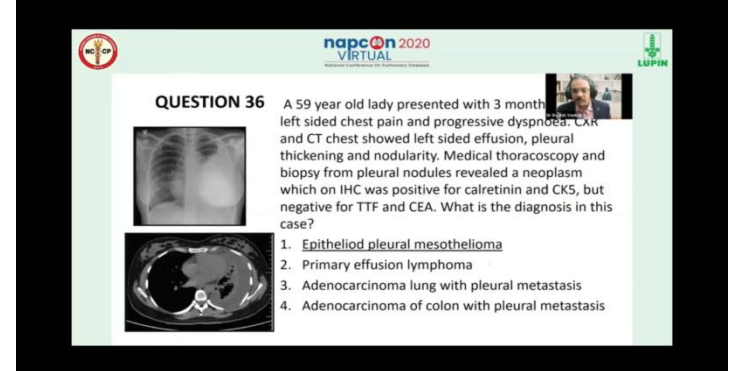
NCCP(I) All-India PG Quiz – Inauguration & Welcome



NCCP(I) All-India PG Quiz – Concluding Remarks



NCCP(I) All-India PG Quiz – Question



NCCP(I) All-India PG Quiz – Question



NCCP(I) All-India PG Quiz – Prize Winners Announcement



NAPCON
NATIONAL CONFERENCE OF PULMONARY DISEASES
Joint National Conference of
NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)
and
INDIAN CHEST SOCIETY



The National College of Chest Physicians (India) organized several conferences since it was formed. The first conference of NCCP(I) (then IACD) was hosted in 1960 at New Delhi jointly with the Association of Physicians of India and other specialist organisations. Subsequent annual conferences were also held jointly with the Association of Physicians of India till 1963, in which year the Association sponsored the 8th International Congress on Chest Diseases in New Delhi. The following year, the Association held its fourth annual conference independently at New Delhi to which the President of the Royal College of Physicians of Edinburgh was a special invitee and guest of honour. In 1974, it held its annual conference jointly with the Tuberculosis Association of India.

Since 1989, NCCP(I) organised its annual conferences, called NACCON (National Chest Conference). These conferences were very successful and popular and were chaired by the then Presidents of NCCP(I). The Indian Chest Society (ICS) was also hosting its annual national conference, called NCRD (National Congress on Respiratory Diseases). In greater interest of the Pulmonary fraternity of our country, the need to have a united conference of both NCCP(I) and ICS, the two largest national bodies on Pulmonary Medicine was felt. After several positive negotiations and meetings spread over almost 8 years, the President, Secretary and Governing Bodies of both the NCCP (I) and the ICS, evolved a consensus to conduct their joint national conference together. From 1999, the NCCP(I) with ICS is having Joint National Conference on Pulmonary Diseases, called NAPCON. The guidelines for organising NAPCON were finalized to assist the organizers and also to have uniformity in organization and maintain a high academic standard of the scientific programme of NAPCON. NCCP(I) and ICS alternately select the venue and organisers of NAPCON each year and a similar turn is followed for selection of Chairperson of the Scientific Committee, which consists of equal number of members from both associations. To promote national integration, each year NAPCON is hosted at a different city and has in turn been organised in the north, south, east and western regions of our country, truly reflecting a pan-Indian character. The NAPCON logo, selected jointly by both associations shows two hands representing both NCCP(I) and ICS working together in harmony.

NAPCON as a joint venture of NCCP (I) and ICS has been a grand success right from the beginning , providing opportunity to every person in the specialty of Pulmonary Medicine to come together under one roof to achieve the maximum scientific benefit. NAPCON has been attended by eminent faculty from the American Thoracic Society (ATS), American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP), European Respiratory Society (ERS), Asia Pacific Society of Respirology (APSR) and other Chest Specialists from abroad and from neighbouring Asian countries. The scientific programmes of NAPCONs are also state-of-the-art and widely acclaimed internationally. Not only Chest Physicians but also Physicians, Critical care specialists, Radiologists, Infectious disease specialists, Microbiologists and Pathologists, Cardiologists and Thoracic Surgeons and learned faculties from other allied specialties are invited to deliver guest lectures or participate in debates, panel discussions, practice changing research and symposia to enrich the diversity and academic content of the scientific programme.

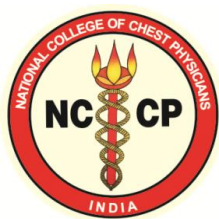
The scientific programme covers a plethora of topics on different aspects of respiratory diseases and other allied sciences including critical care, pneumonia, tuberculosis, viral and other respiratory infections, diffuse lung diseases, asthma, COPD, interstitial lung diseases, sleep disorders, cardio-thoracic surgery, lung cancer, bronchoscopy, thoracoscopy and other thoracic interventions, pleural diseases, pulmonary vascular disorders, pediatric pulmonology, respiratory allergy and immunology, environmental and occupational problems, pulmonary imaging, sports medicine and rehabilitation apart from several other topics to constitute a unique academic feast . Apart from the much-awaited scientific programme, delegates are also given the opportunity to participate in several workshops on a wide variety of topics like pulmonary function tests, imaging, research methods and scientific paper writing, critical care, mechanical ventilation, bronchoscopy and interventional pulmonology, allergy, sleep disorders, interstitial lung diseases, tuberculosis and others to refine their technical knowledge and skills. Satellite symposia and free paper oral and poster presentations add to the academic flavour. The Young budding Chest Physicians and Post-graduates eagerly look forward to the opportunity to present their original research work and more than 700 different abstracts are presented at NAPCON year after year. NAPCON is truly a complete scientific and cultural feast, providing opportunity for many pulmonologists and doctors of other specialties of all ages to meet, interact and have discussion with each other to share their knowledge and experiences to evolve strategies for better management of respiratory diseases .

Right since its inception, NAPCON has grown from strength to strength each year to become one of the largest conferences of Pulmonary diseases in Asia and globally with attendance of nearly 3000 delegates annually. NAPCON is a unique success story in itself, a testimony of unity, strength and cooperation between NCCP(I) and ICS and has evolved into a much sought-after 'Brand name' and 'Status symbol' popular amongst the Chest Physicians and Post-Graduates in India and abroad.

NAPCONs from 1999 till date

Sr. No.	YEAR	VENUE	ORGANISING CHAIRMAN	ORGANISING SECRETARY
1.	1999	Delhi		Dr. J. C. Suri
2.	2000	Kanpur		Dr. S. K. Katiyar
3.	2001	Mumbai	Dr. J. C. Kothari	Dr. Rohini Chowgule
4.	2002	Jaipur	Dr. T. N. Sharma	Dr. N. K. Jain
5.	2003	Coimbatore	Dr. T. K. Moinudeen	Dr. T. Mohan Kumar
6.	2004	Ahmedabad	Dr. Gautam Bhagat	Dr. Rajesh Solanki
7.	2005	Kolkata	Dr. A. K. Ghosh	Dr. A. G. Ghoshal
8.	2006	Nagpur		Dr. B. O. Tayade
9.	2007	Chandigarh	Dr. S. K. Jindal	Dr. Dheeraj Gupta
10.	2008	Lucknow		Dr. Rajendra Prasad
11.	2009	Calicut		Dr. C. Ravindran
12.	2010	Jodhpur	Dr. P. D. Motiani	Dr. K. C. Agarwal
13.	2011	Delhi	Dr. V. K. Vijayan	Dr. Raj Kumar
14.	2012	Bhubaneshwar	Dr. N. K. Gacchayat	Dr. Narayan Mishra
15.	2013	Chennai	Dr. Vijayalakshmi Thanasekaraan	Dr. B. Rajagopalan
16.	2014	Agra	Dr. A. S. Sachan	Dr. Rakesh Bhargava Dr. Santosh Kumar
17.	2015	Jaipur	Dr. N. K. Jain	Dr. Virendra Singh
18.	2016	Mumbai	Dr. K. C. Mohanty	Dr. Agam Vora Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar
19.	2017	Kolkata	Dr. A. G. Ghoshal	Dr. Dhrubajyoti Roy Dr. Raja Dhar
20.	2018	Ahmedabad	Dr. Rajesh Solanki	Dr. Raj Bhagat Dr. Tushar Patel
21.	2019	Kochi	Dr. C. Ravindran	Dr. Rajesh Venkat
22.	2020	Virtual	Dr. S. N. Gaur	Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar

All NAPCONs till date were a grand success, appreciated by members and fellows of both NCCP(I) and ICS, faculty, delegates and post-graduate students, as well as the foreign faculty and delegates. Credit for this success goes to team work from NCCP(I) and ICS, the Organising Committee and the Scientific Committee for working hard in tandem to ensure fabulous conferences of high repute which are appreciated and acclaimed internationally. We are confident the same spirit will continue, year after year, and we look forward to greater participation as well as better conferences in the future.



27th – 31st January, 2021

PREPARING TOGETHER FOR A BETTER FUTURE

CONFERENCE REPORT OF VIRTUAL NAPCON 2020

Dear Colleagues,

22nd NAPCON 2020, the 22nd Joint National Conference of Pulmonary Diseases of the National College of Chest Physicians (India) and Indian Chest Society, was organized for the very first time as a virtual conference due to the prevailing situation caused by COVID-19. The virtual conclave was planned as a five-day event from 27th to 31st January 2021 under the leadership of Dr. S. N. Gaur as Organising Chairman and Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar as Organising Secretary. Dr. S. K. Katiyar was nominated as the Chairman, Scientific Committee and entrusted with the task of drafting a state-of-the-art scientific programme for the virtual conclave.

Though time was short, having less than 5 months to go, the Organising Committee with the support and goodwill of the national leadership of NCCP(I) and ICS began preparations in right earnest. The theme "Preparing Together for a Better Future" was selected for virtual NAPCON 2020, with the objective to design a spectacular scientific and workshop programme, rich in academic content, exceptional in diversity and expertise of faculty and designed to change the perspective of day-to-day-clinical practice in the field of Pulmonary Medicine in this era of COVID-19. The first announcement brochure was released on 8th October and the website with online registration became operational on 10th October 2020. NAPCON 2020 website became highly popular within a short span of time, recording more than 10000 visits within two months and subsequently social media presence with pages on Facebook and Linked In also became operational. A sponsor brochure for industry participation was released on 29th October and a final brochure with complete scientific and workshop programmes was released on 28th December 2020.

Though organised differently, for the very first time as an entirely virtual conference, the response to NAPCON 2020 from the pulmonary fraternity and post-graduates was unexpected and overwhelming. A total of 4321 delegates registered for the conference. 1002 abstracts were submitted for presentation at NAPCON 2020, out of which 9 were selected for Oral presentation in the NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur Young Scientist Award, 8 for ICS - Dr. J. C. Kothari Young Scientist Award and 350 for twelve different categories of NAPCON 2020 Award (Oral Paper) sessions, and the remaining 635 on display as E-Posters for NAPCON 2020 Award (Poster) in the Virtual E-Poster Gallery. Competitions like the NCCP(I) – NAPCON Post-Graduate Quiz and Talent Hunt were organised under the banner of NAPCON 2020 for delegates and post-graduates to encourage participation in academic as well as extra-curricular activities.

A unique 3-D virtual platform was designed under supervision of Organising Committee for virtual NAPCON 2020 after four months of preparation and demonstration which went online just prior to conference commencement. The platform had several new features such as a virtual convention centre entry and walkthrough, separate lobby for conference and workshop, 7 halls for the scientific programme and free papers, E-Poster gallery with separate displays for posters categorized into twelve different categories of respiratory diseases, Virtual Delegate E-Kit, entertainment zone, networking lounge, and exhibition. The attractive design, layout and novel features of the virtual platform were highly appreciated by all national and overseas delegates, faculty and post-graduates alike. The Virtual Delegate E-kit incorporated the NAPCON E-Souvenir as a digital flipbook with sound, NCCP(I) text book on Clinical Pearls in Respiratory Medicine for the post-graduates, membership benefits and enrolment forms of both NCCP(I) and ICS, NCCP(I) Newsletter Lung Bulletin based on Pulmonary function tests, ICS Newsletter Respire and other publications of academic value. An entertainment zone with more than 370 online games provided opportunity for relaxation and refreshment from time to time. A delegate-cum-snack kit was dispatched personally by courier on a first-come-first-served basis to the address of registered delegates .

A total of nine pre-conference virtual workshops under the leadership of workshop Directors on different topics like Allergy & Immunotherapy (by Dr. Raj Kumar), Thoracic Imaging (by Dr. Bhavin Jankharia), Pulmonary function tests (by Dr. Mohan Kumar Thekkinkattil), Respiratory failure & mechanical ventilation (by Dr. Dhruva Chaudhry), Bronchoscopy (by Dr. Rajesh Chawla), Thoracoscopy (by Dr. Rakesh Chawla), Advanced Sleep medicine (by Dr. Vikram Sarbhai), Interstitial lung diseases and lung transplantation (by Dr. Deepak Talwar & Dr. Apar Jindal) and a new workshop on Objective structured clinical examination (by Dr. Mansi Gupta & Dr. Pranav Ish)

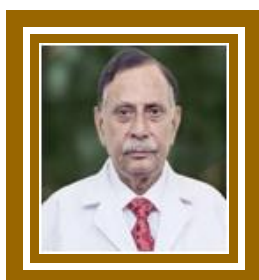
were systematically planned by the Organising committee, with support from the Scientific and Workshop committees. Dr. Nasser Yusuf in his capacity as Convenor, Workshop committee ensured smooth coordination between workshop directors and faculty for glitch-free conduction of the entire workshop programme.

NAPCON 2020 began with an auspicious start on Wednesday, 27th January 2021 with the nine pre-conference workshops well attended by a total of 860 delegates. The conclave was virtually inaugurated on Wednesday, 27th January 2021 at the hands of our Chief Guest Hon'ble Dr. Harsh Vardhan Ji , Union Minister for Health and Family Welfare, Science and Technology and Earth Sciences, Government of India and our Guest of Honor Hon'ble Dr. Jitendra Singh Ji, Minister of State for North-East region, Prime Minister's Office, Ministry of Personnel, Public Grievances and Pensions , Department of Atomic Energy & Space, Government of India, who also released the NAPCON 2020 E - Souvenir and other conference publications in the presence of Dr. S. N. Gaur, Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2020 and Secretary, NCCP(I), Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar, Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2020, Dr. P. D. Motiani, President, NCCP(I), Dr. D. J. Christopher, President, ICS, Dr. Rajesh Swarnakar, Secretary, ICS and Dr. S. K. Katiyar, Chairman, Scientific Committee, NAPCON 2020. The lifetime achievement awardees Dr. Rajendra Prasad of NCCP(I) and Dr. V. K. Arora, Dr. Mohammed Sabir and Dr. Surender Kashyap of ICS and the oration awardees Dr. Surender Kashyap, Dr. Manoj Goel, Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar and Dr. Hari Mohan Kansal of NCCP(I) and Dr. Sudhir Chaudhri, Dr. Raj Kumar, Dr. Balamugesh Thanmugam and Dr. Salil Bhargava of ICS were also felicitated during the inaugural ceremony which was virtually attended by 642 delegates.

An extensive state-of-the-art scientific programme for NAPCON 2020 was drafted under the dynamic leadership of Dr. S. K. Katiyar, Chairman, Scientific Committee, with inputs from other members of the scientific committee and included participation of 460 national and 119 international faculty. For the very first time, 19 international Chest associations were invited to design symposia on specific topics of interest and depute their senior faculty members to participate in the scientific deliberations. The Asian-Pacific Society of Respiriology designed a symposium on COVID-19 in the Asia-Pacific and deputed faculty members from 9 societies including the Japan Respiratory Society, Thoracic Society of Australia and New Zealand, Taiwan Society of Pulmonary & Critical Care Medicine, Indonesian Society of Respiriology, Malaysian Thoracic Society , Singapore Thoracic Society, Hong Kong Thoracic Society, Mongolian Respiratory Society and the Sri Lanka College of Pulmonologists. Symposia were also designed by the American Thoracic Society, American College of Chest Physicians, European Respiratory Society, Cleveland Clinic , International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Diseases (The Union), Turkish Thoracic Society, Japan anti-TB Association, Bangladesh Primary Care Respiratory Society and Nepalese Respiratory Society and approved by the Scientific Committee. The scientific programme of NAPCON 2020 commenced on Thursday, 28th January till Sunday, 31st January 2021 from 9 a.m. to 6:30 p.m. on all days and witnessed record attendance of 3548 delegates on 28th January, 2658 on 29th January, 2588 on 30th January and 1961 on 31st January 2021. The NCCP (I) and ICS orations also witnessed record attendance of 469 and 426 attendees respectively. The best attended session in the scientific programme was the APSR symposium on COVID-19 on 28th January 2021 with 468 attendees.

A virtual All-India post-graduate quiz under aegis of NCCP(I) was convened by Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar on 30th January 2021 with Dr. Vishnu Sharma as Quiz Master and Dr. Rajesh Venkat as Co-Quiz Master and was presided over by Dr. S. N. Gaur, Dr. P. D. Motiani and Dr. S. K. Katiyar. Virtual Cultural programmes were broadcast on 28th and 30th January 2021 during the evening. One of the cultural programmes, compiled by Academy of Pulmonary and Critical Care medicine under the leadership of Dr. Jayaprakash B had participation from medical college chest faculty and was very much appreciated by the delegates. NAPCON 2020 also hosted the virtual Governing Council and Annual General Body meetings of National College of Chest Physicians (India) and Indian Chest Society. The highly successful and much-appreciated scientific deliberations of the conference concluded with the valedictory function on Sunday, 31st January 2021.

22nd NAPCON 2020 surpassed all records of previous conferences with the largest number of registered delegates, attendees, international participation and abstracts submitted for presentation, setting a benchmark for other virtual conferences to follow and creating a milestone for medical conferences in the near future. We humbly thank and acknowledge all delegates, faculty members and our colleagues for their goodwill and participation at the conference, which helped greatly towards making the first-ever Virtual NAPCON a grand success.



Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur
Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2020



Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar
Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2020

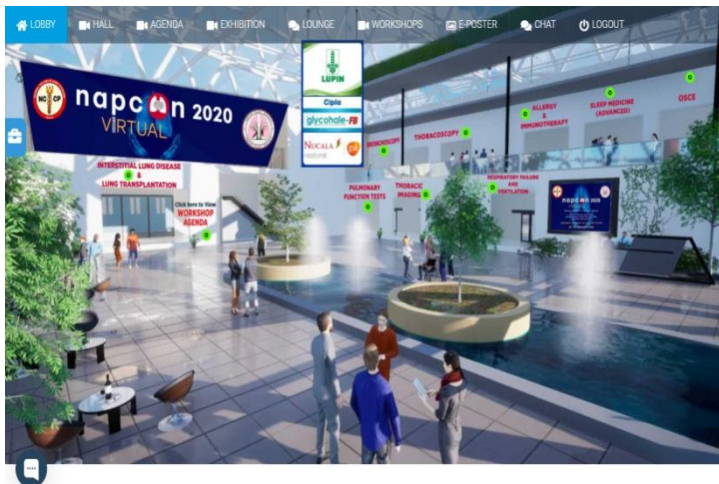
GLIMPSES OF VIRTUAL NAPCON 2020



Convention Centre Entry & Walkthrough



Conference Lobby



Workshop Lobby

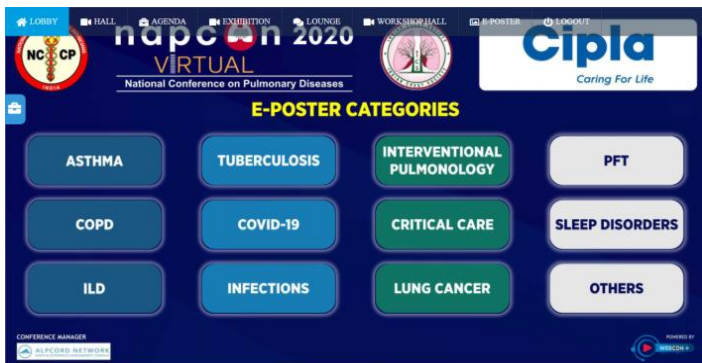


Networking Lounge



Inaugural Ceremony

Dignitaries from Left to Right : Dr. S. N. Gaur (Organising Chairman, NAPCON 2020 & Secretary, NCCP[I]), Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar (Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2020), Dr. P. D. Motiani (President, NCCP[I]), Dr. D. J. Christopher (President, ICS), Dr. Rajesh Swarnakar (Secretary, ICS), Dr. S. K. Katiyar (Chairman, Scientific Committee, NAPCON 2020), Dr. Jitendra Singh (Guest of Honor, Hon'ble Union Minister of State for North-East region, Prime Minister's Office, Ministry of Personnel, Public Grievances and Pensions, Department of Atomic Energy & Space, Government of India)



E – Poster Gallery



Exhibition



NCCP(I) – Prof. Dr. S. N. Gaur Young Scientist Award



NCCP(I) Annual General Body Meeting



APSR Symposium on COVID-19



National Symposium



NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)
Congratulates All Awardees



Dr. Rajendra Prasad
awarded

NCCP(I) – Prof. M. M. Singh Lifetime Achievement Award



Dr. Surender Kashyap
awarded

NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. Raman Vishwanathan
Memorial Chest Oration



Dr. Manoj Goel
awarded

NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. A. S. Paintal - Prof. Dr. R. C. Jain
Memorial Chest Oration



Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar
awarded

NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. P. S. Shankar - Prof. Dr. K. C. Mohanty
Chest Oration



Dr. Hari Mohan Kansal
awarded

NCCP(I) - Prof. Dr. S. K. Jain - Prof. Dr. S. K. Katiyar
Chest Oration



Dr. V. K. Arora
awarded

ICS – Lifetime Achievement Award



Dr. Surender Kashyap
awarded

ICS – Lifetime Achievement Award



Dr. M. Sabir
awarded

ICS – Lifetime Achievement Award



Dr. Sudhir Chaudhri
awarded

ICS - Dr. S. N. Tripathy Presidential Oration Award



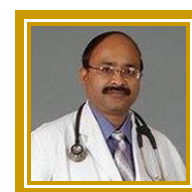
Dr. Balamugesh T
awarded

ICS - Dr. K. J. R. Murthy Oration Award



Dr. Raj Kumar
awarded

ICS - Dr. C. V. Ramakrishnan Oration Award

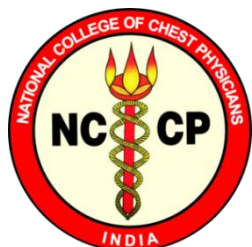


Dr. Salil Bhargava
awarded

ICS - Dr. O. A. Sarma Oration Award

RESULTS OF ORAL PAPERS & E-POSTERS AT NAPCON 2020

Congratulations to All Awardees



NCCP(I) – PROF. S. N. GAUR's YOUNG SCIENTIST AWARD

THURSDAY 28-01-2021 11:15 – 13:00

RESULTS	
1ST	SHONA ARLIN CHRISTOPHER
2ND	SHARAD BAGRI
3RD	AHMED SAFWAN



ICS – Dr. J. C. KOTHARI YOUNG SCIENTIST AWARD

FRIDAY 29-01-2021 11:30 – 13:15

RESULTS	
1ST	TARANG KULKARNI
2ND	SHONA ARLIN CHRISTOPHER
3RD	ANAND VIJAY

NAPCON 2020 AWARD - ORAL

WEDNESDAY 27-01-2021

TIME	SESSION	RESULTS	
9:30 - 11:30	ASTHMA (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	PRASHAMSA CHELIMALLA
		2ND	LUBAIBA K
		3RD	MIDHUN MOHAN K
11:00 - 12:30	COPD (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	ALEKYA KALLA
		2ND	ANIKET MONDAL
		3RD	DEESHA GHORPADE
12:30 - 13:45	MISCELLANEOUS (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	AKHIL BABU C
		2ND	AJIT KUMAR J SOUNDARIYAN
		3RD	MONICA BANSAL DEEP KOTHARI
13:45 - 15:45	LUNG CANCER (CASE REPORTS) - I	1ST	JITENDRA SINGH
		2ND	ASHA U
		3RD	BENJAMIN WILLIAMS
15:45 - 18:00	TUBERCULOSIS (MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS - BEST PAPER)	1ST	VIPUL KUMAR
		2ND	PAULAMI PALCHOWDHURY
		3RD	PIYALI SARKAR RAJAT AGARWAL

THURSDAY 28-01-2021

TIME	SESSION	RESULTS	
9:00 - 10:15	INFECTIONS (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	ANEESHA KONDURU
		2ND	SINDHU RAVALI
		3RD	ANAND V
10:15 - 11:30	INTERVENTIONAL PULMONOLOGY (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	MATHEW VARGHESE
		2ND	PAPIA MONDAL ASHA NAIR
		3RD	M BRIGHTON KRUTESH TRIPATHI
11:30 - 13:15	TUBERCULOSIS (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	ANANTHU JOSEPH
		2ND	ANISH
		3RD	M RAJEEV NAIK
13:15 - 15:15	COVID-19 (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	JYOTHI GEETHA MOHANKUMAR
		2ND	ANERI PAREKH
		3RD	JAYAVIGNESH J
15:15 - 17:15	CRITICAL CARE (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	LOVELEEN SHARMA
		2ND	VAIBHAV PADASHETTI
		3RD	RISHNA RAVINDRAN SHONA ARLIN CHRISTOPHER
17:15 -	ILD	1ST	ANCY ELSA THOMAS

18:15	(RESEARCH PAPERS)	2ND	ASHISH PRAKASH SUTHIRTH VAIDYA
		3RD	BELINDA ANET PREETI VIDYASAGAR

FRIDAY 29-01-2021

TIME	SESSION	RESULTS	
9:00 - 10:15	OTHERS (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	S CHANDRASHEKHAR
		2ND	SEJAL RADIA
		3RD	ANAS S
10:15 - 11:30	INTERVENTIONAL PULMONOLOGY (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II	1ST	UMANG SHAH
		2ND	SAPAN KUMAR
		3RD	SUVARNA KALLI
11:30 - 13:30	COVID-19 (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II	1ST	MADHURI KALYANI K
		2ND	R ANAND
		3RD	POOJITHA BAI MERIN THOMAS
13:30 - 15:30	LUNG CANCER (CASE REPORTS) - II	1ST	PRNOY SEN
		2ND	N BHANUTHEJA
		3RD	RAMYA PRIYA SANGAVI R
15:30 - 16:30	OTHERS (CASE REPORTS) - I	1ST	ARCHIT KRISHNA MANOHAR
		2ND	ASHA U
		3RD	ABIRAMI DHARMALINGAM
16:30 - 17:30	OTHERS (CASE REPORTS) - II	1ST	UJWAL JAIN
		2ND	S PUGAZHENDI
		3RD	MOHAMMED ABDUL BASITH
17:30 - 18:15	MISCELLANEOUS (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	RITA GOJIYA
		2ND	SHRADDHA TEWARI
		3RD	ANVESHA TUMMALA

SATURDAY 30-01-2021

TIME	SESSION	RESULTS	
9:00 - 10:15	OTHERS - KARTAGENER'S SYNDROME (BEST CASE REPORTS)	1ST	INDRANIL BANERJEE
		2ND	D SHIVA KUMAR NAYAK
		3RD	ORUGANTI SINDHUJA
10:15 - 11:45	COVID-19 (RESEARCH PAPERS) - III	1ST	TEJAS SURI
		2ND	SAGAR PANCHAL
		3RD	SHAMA SHARMA SHILPA K V
11:45 - 13:15	INFECTIONS (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	RISHAB RAMPRADEEP
		2ND	SAYANI BOSE
		3RD	G LOHITHA SRI GAURI
13:15 - 14:30	PFT (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	VISHAL MORE
		2ND	MANU SIVA
		3RD	NAYEEM KADIR VARDHELLY RAMESH
17:15 - 18:15	LUNG CANCER (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	PRIYA N
		2ND	SUTHIRTH VAIDYA
		3RD	APARNA SURESH

18:15 - 19:30	CONSULTANTS (BEST PAPERS)	1ST	RAJA DHAR
		2ND	DEEPAK TALWAR
		3RD	RAJANI BHAT

SUNDAY 31-01-2021

TIME	SESSION	RESULTS	
9:00 - 10:15	SLEEP DISORDERS (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	ANSHUL JAIN
		2ND	ASHA U JUVA KISHAN SRIKANTH
		3RD	RAHUL GHOSH
10:15 - 11:45	OTHERS - DEVELOPMENTAL ANOMALIES (BEST CASE REPORTS)	1ST	TEJAWAT KUSHAL KUMAR
		2ND	PRAKHAR SHARMA
		3RD	PRASHANTHI R KRUNAL THUMAR
11:45 - 13:00	INTERVENTIONAL PULMONOLOGY (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	AMUTHA PRIYA SM
		2ND	SHARON ARUNA CATHY C
		3RD	AVINASH DAL N A ARUN
13:00 - 14:15	COPD (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II	1ST	PRABHURAM J
		2ND	PRIYANKA SINGH
		3RD	PRATEEK GUPTA
14:15 - 16:15	TUBERCULOSIS (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II	1ST	SHILPA KV
		2ND	SHARAN KUMAR
		3RD	RICHU BOB KURIEN
16:15 - 18:15	TUBERCULOSIS (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	SIVASANKARI R
		2ND	APARNA SURESH
		3RD	RISHAB RAMPRADEEP
18:15 - 19:15	YOUNG CONSULTANTS (BEST PAPERS)	1ST	UMANG SHAH
		2ND	ARJUN KHANNA
		3RD	PRANAV ISH SAMEER ARBAT

EXTRA SESSION

(ORGANISED ON SPECIAL REQUEST BY THOSE WHO COULD NOT LOG IN ONLINE TO PRESENT THEIR ORAL PAPERS DURING THEIR SCHEDULED SESSIONS AT THE TIME OF THE VIRTUAL CONFERENCE)

SESSION	RESULTS	
MISCELLANEOUS (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II	1ST	CAROL HANNAH BABU
	2ND	KANDAVEL
	3RD	MONISHA ANANDHAN YADVENDRA SINGH

NAPCON 2020 AWARD – E-POSTER

SESSION	RESULTS	
ASTHMA (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	RASHMI RANJAN DAS
	2ND	SAI RAMYA G
	3RD	VAISHALI NAIK
ASTHMA (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	AJEESH KP
	2ND	MUDRA KHARE
	3RD	ANKUR GUPTA
COPD (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I	1ST	LAVANYA SV
	2ND	NEETHU K
	3RD	EVELIN ROY HAADI NIZAR AHAMMED OMKAR PRASAD RATH
COPD (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II (21-34)	1ST	SONALI JADHAV
	2ND	RUCHIRA ROY
	3RD	SANDIP DAS
COPD (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	HEMALATHA DARSI
	2ND	ATHUL THULASI
	3RD	SREERAG VARRIOR
ILD (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	KAUMUDI DEVI
	2ND	MONICA BANSAL MUNIZA BAI
	3RD	CHAITANYA KIRAN GARA SAMIKSHA KAMBLE
ILD (CASE REPORTS) - I (1-16)	1ST	BHUMIN PATEL
	2ND	MOHAMMED AFAQUE
	3RD	ATHUL THULASI
ILD (CASE REPORTS) - II (17-32)	1ST	RAMEES NAJEEB
	2ND	RIKSOAM CHATTERJEE
	3RD	SONAL GOYAL
TUBERCULOSIS (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	JAGRUTI AHIR
	2ND	SRIKERTHI S
	3RD	ACHAL SINGH SHABNA A
TUBERCULOSIS (CASE REPORTS) - I (1-17)	1ST	AMIT GOYAL
	2ND	ARULMURUGAN D
	3RD	AVANI RAJPUT
TUBERCULOSIS (CASE REPORTS) - II (18-34)	1ST	JITENDRA KUMAR CHOUDHARY
	2ND	KOVURI VENKATESH
	3RD	IJAS V I
TUBERCULOSIS (CASE REPORTS) - III (35-51)	1ST	UMA SHARMA
	2ND	SHRUTI NARAYAN GUDHANE
	3RD	S MADHAN
COVID-19 (RESEARCH PAPERS) - I (1-14)	1ST	JAYALAKSHMI TK
	2ND	CAROL HANNAH BABU
	3RD	JANNELA BHAVNARAYANA
COVID-19 (RESEARCH PAPERS) - II (15-28)	1ST	SAGAR PANCHAL
	2ND	MERIN THOMAS
	3RD	SAGAR BHAGAT

COVID-19 (RESEARCH PAPERS) - III (29-42)	1ST	SUTHIRTH VAIDYA
	2ND	SINDHU RAVALI
	3RD	VIJAY BABU R
COVID-19 (CASE REPORTS) - I (1-13)	1ST	ASHISH PRAKASH
	2ND	ABHIJEET LONSANE
	3RD	DINAKARAN UMASHANKAR
COVID-19 (CASE REPORTS) - II (14-26)	1ST	MIHIR GANGAKHEDKAR
	2ND	REVANTH KUMAR NAKKA
	3RD	RAMEES NAJEEB
INFECTIONS (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	A J MAHENDRAN NISNA MEDAPPIL
	2ND	ARITRA GANGULY K SHYAMALA PRAGNYA
	3RD	ANIRBAN MONDAL P TANUJA SHIVAM PRIYADARSHI
INFECTIONS (CASE REPORTS) - I (1-16)	1ST	KARTHIKA PRASAD
	2ND	FEBI ANN ROY
	3RD	E RAJU
INFECTIONS (CASE REPORTS) - II (17-32)	1ST	VATSAL GUPTA
	2ND	SYED MUFTHAH
	3RD	SATHISH CHANDAR REDDY
INTERVENTIONAL PULMONOLOGY (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	SHAFIN BABU
	2ND	UMANG SHAH
	3RD	KOVVADA ASWINI
INTERVENTIONAL PULMONOLOGY (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	BHUMIKA MADHAV
	2ND	MUTHULAKSHMI S
	3RD	ANAND RAJA
CRITICAL CARE (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	ASHWINI NAIK
	2ND	SHIVAM PRIYADARSHI
	3RD	RICHE GEORGE
CRITICAL CARE (CASE REPORTS)	1ST	KARTHIK K RAMYA PRIYA
	2ND	RUCHA SANE WANBOR SUNGOH
	3RD	ATHUL C ANGAJ KIRAN ASHOK BALANI S GOWTHAM
LUNG CANCER (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	AJIT KUMAR SHRAVANI D
	2ND	B RAMYA KRISHNA JITENDRA KUMAR BAIRWA
	3RD	KAPIL TOMAR KARAN RAJ SINGHAL NAMAN AJWANI
LUNG CANCER (CASE REPORTS) - I (1-15)	1ST	ASHISH KAUSHIK
	2ND	ASHA U B SNEHA
	3RD	ANU KUMARI
LUNG CANCER (CASE REPORTS) - II (16-30)	1ST	GAUTHAMRAM KARTHIK
	2ND	JUVA KISHAN SRIKANTH
	3RD	HARITHA SREE CH
LUNG CANCER (CASE REPORTS) - III (31-45)	1ST	MEGHANA SUBHASH
	2ND	ORUGANTI SINDHUJA
	3RD	PREETAM PARIDA

LUNG CANCER (CASE REPORTS) - IV (46-62)	1ST	S MATHIVADANI
	2ND	SAMEENA URS
	3RD	RUPAL NAIR
PFT (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	APARNA NIRMAL
	2ND	PRAJJWAL SARKAR
	3RD	SHAFNA P
SLEEP DISORDERS (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	NIDHI SUDHAKAR SAROJ MEENA
	2ND	DIPANSHU JAIN PRASHANT YADAV
	3RD	AMRUTHA MOHAN V NITHIN KUMAR REDDY PRATEEK AGARWAL RAHUL
OTHERS (RESEARCH PAPERS)	1ST	GEORGE ROSHAN PRASHANTH D
	2ND	ROSHAN KUMAR M
	3RD	ATIT SHAH DHARAMENDRA KUMAR GUPTA PAYYAVULA VENKAIAH
OTHERS (CASE REPORTS) - I (1-15)	1ST	ANURAG TRIPATHI
	2ND	AKILAN M ANURAG SHARMA
	3RD	AJEET SINGH THAKUR
OTHERS (CASE REPORTS) - II (16-30)	1ST	GOWTHAM KUMAR V
	2ND	B RAMYA KRISHNA HARSHAVARDHINI P
	3RD	BASEERAHMMAD WALIKAR DARSHAN NIMAVAT FASIL N HIMAJA REDDY INEX ANN JOSEPH JEEVA BABU
OTHERS (CASE REPORTS) - III (31-44)	1ST	MUNIZA BAI
	2ND	K PREMCHAND
	3RD	MEGHNA RAI PRASAD OMKAR KONJETI
OTHERS (CASE REPORTS) - IV (45-60)	1ST	ROBIN VARGHESE JOHN SEJAL RADIA
	2ND	K LOGESWARI MONICA Y
	3RD	POOJA BAJAJ RITAMVARA OLI VENKATESWARAN
EXTRA SESSIONS		
(ORGANISED ON SPECIAL REQUEST FOR THOSE POST-GRADUATES ON COVID-19 DUTIES COULD NOT SUBMIT THEIR E-POSTERS ON TIME FOR UPLOADING TO THE VIRTUAL E-POSTER GALLERY BY 25th JANUARY 2021)		
MISCELLANEOUS RESEARCH PAPERS	1ST	ALEENA MATHEW
	2ND	GAURI GADGE
	3RD	AASTHA GUPTA
MISCELLANEOUS CASE REPORTS	1ST	PRANZAL GARG
	2ND	K SHYAMALA PRAGNYA
	3RD	KRISHNAPRIYA S KUMAR

PREFACE TO ACADEMIC SECTION



Dr. Nikhil Sarangdhar

Editor, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin

Organising Secretary, NAPCON 2020 & 2016

Former Assistant Professor, Department of TB & Chest diseases, K. J. Somaiya medical college, Mumbai

Young Scientist Awardee of the Indian College of Allergy Asthma and Immunology (2011, 2014 & 2015),

Association of Physicians of India (2015), Indian Chest Society (2015),

National College of Chest Physicians - India (2017)

E-mail : ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com

Dear Colleagues,

As Editor of our NCCP(I) Newsletter - Lung Bulletin, it is my privilege to welcome You to the academic section, dedicated exclusively to the theme "Pulmonary Function Tests". You would, no doubt, wonder about the selection of this theme for the second issue of Lung Bulletin. I have, time and again, stressed on the shift from communicable (infectious) to non-communicable diseases, a trend which has occurred in our country and the developing world over the last few decades. The names of several chronic respiratory diseases (CRDs) spring to the minds of pulmonologists, because, as clinicians we deal with many of them in our day-to-day practice. Asthma, Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, Bronchiectasis, Interstitial Lung Diseases are but to name a few. Since many CRDs are progressive and irreversible, it is of paramount importance to suspect, detect and diagnose them at an early stage for better symptom relief and control, and to do so, one must understand the natural history, origins, causes, pathogenesis, physiology, clinical features, tools for diagnosis, and modalities for assessment and monitoring of any CRD, for which, pulmonary function tests are an indispensable asset to the practising pulmonologist at all levels.

To "inspire" means to "breathe in" and "metric" means "measurement". So "Spirometry" simply means "the measurement of one's breath". Ever since Sir John Hutchinson invented the first spirometer to measure the volume of air that could be forcefully exhaled from the lungs after complete inflation, to which he gave the name "vital capacity", believing it to be compatible with life, spirometry has evolved into an important and essential tool in the diagnosis and evaluation of respiratory diseases. As technology advanced over the years, so did the spirometer, and today, spirometry equipment has become simple, compact and inexpensive, facilitating its inclusion for routine testing in the out-patient chest clinic.

Clinical features in the later stages of a disease are often a reflection of the underlying etiology and pathophysiology which began earlier, and knowledge about these in tandem greatly assists the physician while suspecting a disease or cause and provides further guidance towards making a confident diagnosis and accurate severity assessment, which are essential to initiate appropriate treatment for relief of the patient's symptoms or condition. This is where Spirometry and other pulmonary function tests come into practice, as they are useful right from the beginning, from the time of clinical presentation, to diagnosis, severity assessment and monitoring treatment response. For any test, guidelines, advisories, recommendations, consensus statements and position papers ensure standards of care at all levels, and pulmonary function tests are no exception. The National College of Chest Physicians (India) and Indian Chest Society, the two largest associations of pulmonologists in India have drafted revised joint guidelines for spirometry at an expert group meeting at Post-Graduate Institute of Medical Education and Research (PGIMER), Chandigarh in 2019 and also organise training courses on a periodic basis to familiarize clinicians as well as technicians with working skills related to the practice of spirometry.

One of the objectives of NCCP(I) is to promote and encourage good standards of clinical practice which we believe will enhance the future of Pulmonary Medicine in India and help to drive our specialty forward. The object of this section is to cover the basic aspects of spirometry and other pulmonary function tests and their utility and application in day-to-day clinical practice. India is as diverse as it is vast, and we at NCCP(I) are committed to upholding cultural integrity along with unity in our diversity, by giving recognition to both seniority and young talent and promoting clinical expertise along with evidence-based medicine through a pan-Indian approach. As You read further, You would realise that we have carefully selected from a pool of the best authors of all ages spanning the very length and breadth of our vast country, some of them from premier medical institutions of national importance to share their knowledge and experiences regarding the principles and practices of pulmonary function testing with You, reflecting the importance we attach to cultural diversity and national representation. While compiling Lung Bulletin, we have made a sincere attempt to cater to the needs and expectations of all our readers, the young, senior as well as middle-aged Chest Physicians, as well as the post-graduate trainees, keeping true to the vision of our founders.

This section contains chapters that impart knowledge about basic sciences, performance, interpretation and applications of commonly used pulmonary function tests in clinical practice, with basic information about the more advanced pulmonary function tests for the keen reader. I acknowledge and appreciate the efforts of all our distinguished authors. All articles were meticulously written and contain references for those who wish to read further. We hope these articles will provide valuable insight and promote good clinical practices ensuring standards of care for the practice of spirometry and other pulmonary function tests across India as well as beyond our shores. We have tried to provide a concise, yet comprehensive review of the theory and practice of pulmonary function tests in a nutshell and hope both teachers and students of Pulmonary Medicine as well as young Chest Physicians who have just started practice will find it immensely useful as a one-stop source of information on pulmonary function testing which everyone would like to have on their desks.

Wish You All Pleasant Reading !

Introduction and History of Pulmonary Function Testing



P. S. Shankar

Emeritus Professor of Medicine & Senior CEO, KBN Teaching Hospital, Kalaburagi, Karnataka

Emeritus Professor of Medicine, Rajiv Gandhi University of Health Sciences, Karnataka

E-mail : drpsshankar@gmail.com

Introduction :

The respiratory system is essentially concerned with exchange of gases between the inspired air and blood in the alveolar capillaries. It provides a surface for transfer of gases through which blood gets rid of carbon dioxide and absorbs oxygen, in doing so, the pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide are maintained in the arterial blood at 100 mm Hg and 40 mm Hg respectively while breathing ambient air at sea level.

The process involves ventilation, concerned with movement of gases along the airways to and out of the alveoli, intrapulmonary distribution of air (V) and adequate perfusion of capillaries (Q) matching ventilation and perfusion, thus diffusion of gases over the wide area of the alveolar-capillary membrane. These processes are closely integrated. In addition to the gaseous exchange, lungs play an important role in the maintenance of acid-base balance as they offer a surface for elimination of CO₂ produced in the body during metabolic processes¹.

History :

Pulmonary function tests took root with the introduction of spirometer (Latin : *spiro* - to breathe; *meter* - to measure) to measure the lung function of a person. The instrument, Spirometer was invented by an English Surgeon, John Hutchinson in the 1840s. The original instrument was as tall as an adult person and it consisted a calibrated bucket placed upside down in water. The volume of exhaled air from fully inflated lungs was measured by exhaling into a tube leading to the bucket. This measured the 'vital capacity' (term coined by Hutchinson).

Though Hutchinson advocated this 'capacity for life' instrument is useful it did not find widespread use and was initially used only in sanatoria to determine the lung volumes of patients with tuberculosis. It was only after a century when the French Physician Tiffeneau introduced in 1950 the forced measurement of air volumes within a time frame such as forced expiratory volume in 1 second, that Spirometry gained popularity .

A waterless spirometer produced by Jones Medical replaced the water type spirometer in 1960. It opened a new era in the diagnostic field in respiratory disorders. Since then spirometry has found a place in the diagnosis and management of obstructive and restrictive lung diseases, pre-operative assessment of patients, and evaluation of cardiac disorders. Spirometry paved the way for various pulmonary function tests involving ventilation and diffusion capacity testing .

Pulmonary Function Tests

The clinical significance of pulmonary function tests has been established exemplifying the statement of Sterling 'the Physiology of today is the Medicine of tomorrow.'

Pulmonary function tests are undertaken to find out whether the patient has any lung disease. The results of the pulmonary function tests of a given individual are compared with those obtained from a normal population of comparable height, age and gender. The test is considered abnormal if it falls outside the range based on the standard error of the estimate in which 95% of normal lies.²

The methods and measurements obtained in pulmonary function testing are as follows :

1. Airway function³ : The assessment of airway function includes :
 - i) Spirometry (vital capacity VC, forced vital capacity, FVC, forced expiratory volume in 1 second FEV₁, FEV₁/FVC%, tidal volume)
 - ii) Flow volume loops,
 - iii) Peak expiratory flow rate, PEFR by peak flow meter, and,
 - iv) Airway resistance by body plethysmography.
2. Lung volumes : The following subdivisions of lung volumes are measured utilising spirometry, gas dilution technique and plethysmography (Tidal volume TV or V_T, total lung capacity, TLC, functional residual capacity, FRC, and residual volume, RV).
3. Diffusion : Diffusion capacity refers to the magnitude of carbon monoxide gas transfer (DLCO) on the volume of the pulmonary capillary bed and the matching between ventilation and perfusion within the lungs. The technique is utilising single breath diffusing capacity.
4. Respiratory muscle function : Breathlessness may be due to weakness of muscles that inflate the lungs. Peak inspiratory and peak expiratory maximal mouth pressures are simple tests to evaluate respiratory muscle strength.
5. Exercise tests : Exercise tests are helpful in demonstration of integrated functions of cardio-respiratory system.

References :

1. Shankar PS . Physiology in Chest Medicine, 4thEdn, New Delhi, Oxford & IBH, 1994: 13-28
2. Light RW. Clinical Pulmonary function testing, Exercise testing, a Disability evaluation *in* Clinical Medicine: Essentials of pulmonary and critical care Medicine, George RB, Light RW, Matthay MA, Mathay RA (eds), 3rd edn, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1995: 151
3. Bass BH. Lung function tests An introduction, 3rd edn, London, HK Lewis, 1966: 3

Lung Volumes and Capacities



Amita Nene ¹

(1) Professor & Head, Dept. of Respiratory Medicine, Bombay Hospital, Mumbai
 (2) Consultant, Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine,
 Bhailal Amin General Hospitals, Vadodara
 E-mail : amitadoshi@hotmail.com



Neel Thakkar ²

Introduction :

Lung volumes (also known as respiratory volumes) refers to the volume of air in the lungs at a given time during the respiratory cycle. Lung capacities are two or more lung volumes added together. The measurement of Lung volumes and capacities is an integral part of pulmonary function testing. These volumes tend to vary, depending on the depth of respiration, ethnicity, gender, age, body composition and in certain respiratory diseases. Changes in lung volumes are seen with diseases of lung, pleura, diaphragm and chest wall and hence they play a vital role as a diagnostic tool in Pulmonary Medicine. There are 4 lung volumes and 4 lung capacities, as follows (Table 1) :

Lung Volumes		Lung Capacities	
1)	Tidal Volume	1)	Inspiratory Capacity
2)	Inspiratory Reserve Volume	2)	Vital Capacity
3)	Expiratory Reserve Volume	3)	Functional Residual Capacity
4)	Residual Volume	4)	Total Lung Capacity

Table 1. The Lung Volumes and Lung Capacities

Definitions of Lung Volumes :

- **Tidal volume (TV) :** The volume of air inhaled or exhaled with each breath during resting quiet respiration in the respiratory cycle is called the tidal volume. It is around 500 ml in both males and females.
- **Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV) :** It is the maximum volume of air that can be inhaled after a normal inspiration. It is around 3100 ml in males and 2100 ml in females
- **Expiratory reserve volume (ERV) :** It is the maximal volume of air which can be expired after a normal expiration. It is around 1200 ml in males and 800 ml in females
- **Residual volume (RV) :** It is the volume of air remaining in the lungs after maximal expiration. It is around 1200 ml.

Definitions of Lung Capacities (Figure 1) : The term lung capacity means two or more lung volumes added together

- **Inspiratory capacity (IC) :** It is the maximal volume of air that can be inspired from the resting expiratory level. It is calculated from the sum of tidal volume and inspiratory reserve volume. It is around 3600 ml in males and 2600 ml in females. **IC = TV + IRV**
- **Vital capacity (VC) :** It is the maximum volume of air that can be exhaled after a maximal inspiration. It is calculated by summing tidal volume, inspiratory reserve volume, and expiratory reserve volume. It is around 4800 ml in males and 3400 ml in females. **VC = IRV + TV + ERV and VC = TLC – RV**
- **Functional residual capacity (FRC) :** It is the volume of air which remains in the lung at end of normal expiration. It is calculated by adding together residual volume and expiratory reserve volume. It is around 2400 ml in males and 2000 ml in females. **FRC = ERV + RV**

- **Total lung capacity (TLC)** : It the volume of air contained in the lung at the end of maximal inspiration. It is the maximum volume of air the lungs can accommodate and is calculated by summation of the four primary lung volumes. It is around 6000 ml in males and 4600 ml in females **TLC = IRV + TV + ERV + RV,also TLC = VC + RV and TLC = FRC + IC**

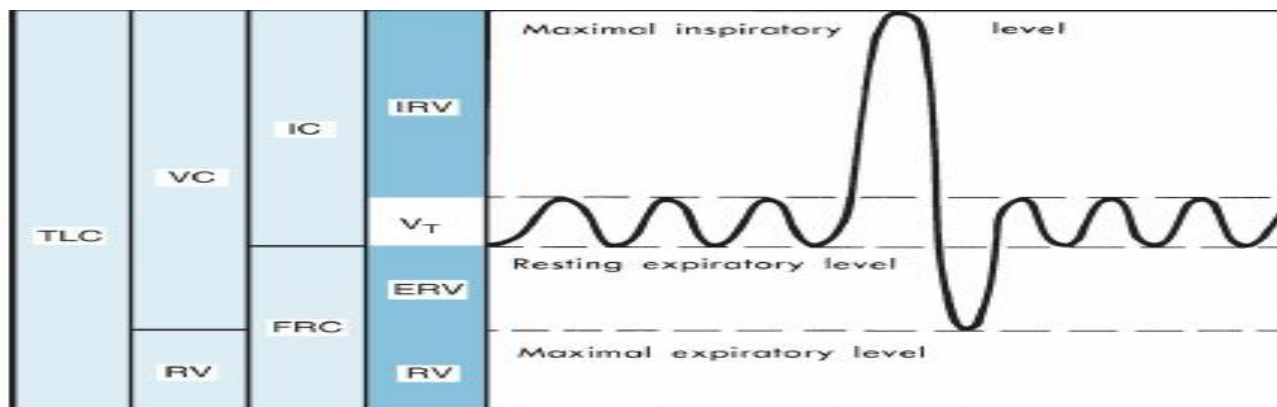


Figure 1. Diagrammatic representation of lung volumes and capacities based on a simple spirogram.

Factors determining Static Lung Volumes :

- **Age:** lung volumes increase with growth of child
- **Old age :** increase in RV & FRC, decrease in ERV
- **Gender:** males have larger lung volumes
- **Height :** taller individuals have larger lung volumes
- **Race:** different in different ethnicities
- **Reduced in** recumbent position than standing
- **Pregnancy :** FRC decreases by 18-20 % due to compression of the diaphragm by the uterus
- **High altitude residents life-long living in relatively hypoxic environments:** have relatively higher lung volumes

Measurement of Lung Volumes :

Various lung volumes and capacities which do not include residual volume (such as vital capacity, inspiratory capacity, inspiratory and expiratory reserve volume and tidal volume) can be measured by simple spirometry. They are compared with predicted values for the given population and are expressed as percent of the predicted value. A value within 80-120% predicted is considered normal. Any value beyond 80-120% predicted is considered abnormal.

All lung volume and capacities are measured directly by spirometer except RV, FRC, TLC. This is because the air in the residual volume of the lung cannot be expired into the spirometer and this volume constitutes part of FRC and TLC.

RV is measured indirectly in 3 steps :

- 1) FRC is typically measured using one of the three techniques
 - Helium dilution
 - Nitrogen washout
 - Body plethysmography
- 2) ERV is measured spirometrically, and
- 3) RV is calculated as the difference between FRC and ERV

TLC is calculated by adding the inspiratory capacity, measured from simple spirometry to the FRC. The addition of RV and VC (from spirometry) also provides an estimate of TLC.

Comparison of plethysmography versus nitrogen and helium dilutional methods :

- 1) Body plethysmography is the gold standard for measurement of lung volumes, particularly in the setting of significant airflow obstruction¹
- 2) Advantage of plethysmography is that it is not affected by distribution of ventilation in cases of airways obstruction
- 3) FRC obtained by dilutional methods is less than that obtained by plethysmography, especially in diseases characterized by air trapping like emphysema and bullous diseases.

- 4) The difference between FRC by plethysmography and by dilutional methods estimates the volume of gas contained in a non-communicating bulla or cyst
- 5) Plethysmography cannot be used in patients with marked obesity, skeletal abnormalities or claustrophobia.

Measurement of TLC using imaging techniques :

In subjects with a limited ability to cooperate, radiographic lung volumes using chest xrays, high resolution computed tomography (HRCT) chest and Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may be more feasible than physiological measurements. Measurements of TLC using the chest radiograph or HRCT correlate within 15% of those obtained by body plethysmography^{1,2}.

Since the TLC is equivalent to the amount of air seen in the lungs on a chest radiograph taken at maximal inspiration, it is important that the subject inhales maximally as the image is created.

Table 2 summarises various methods for measuring lung capacities along with their salient features

Method	Lung Volume	Remarks
Multiple-breath Helium (He) Dilution	FRC	Simple, relatively inexpensive; affected by distribution of ventilation in moderate or severe obstruction; multiple-breath; requires IC, ERV to calculate other lung volumes
Multiple-breath Nitrogen (N ₂) Washout	FRC	Simple, relatively inexpensive; affected by distribution of ventilation in moderate or severe obstruction; multiple-breath; requires IC, ERV to calculate other lung volumes
Plethysmography	FRC	Plethysmographic method more complex but very fast; tends to be more accurate in the presence of airway obstruction than gas dilution techniques
Chest radiograph	TLC	Requires posterior-anterior and lateral chest x-ray films; must breath-hold at TLC; not accurate in the presence of diffuse, space-occupying diseases
HRCT chest	TLC	Involves radiation exposure and increased cost; must breath-hold at TLC; underestimates lung volumes in the presence of airway obstruction
MRI	TLC	No radiation exposure; costly; research tool only

Table 2 : Methods to measure Lung Capacities

Indications for Lung volume determination :

- 1) To differentiate obstructive from restrictive disorders
- 2) To confirm diagnosis of a restrictive disorder
- 3) To detect combined obstructive and restrictive disorders
- 4) Assess response to therapeutic interventions
 - a. Bronchodilators, steroids
 - b. Lung transplantation, lung resection, lung volume reduction
 - c. Radiation or chemotherapy
- 5) Make preoperative assessments of patients with compromised lung function

6) Determine the extent of hyperinflation

7) Assess air trapping by comparison of plethysmographic lung volumes with gas dilution lung volumes

8) Lung volumes are a pre- requirement in lung volume reduction surgery and surgery for bullous emphysema as the preoperative RV/TLC ratio is directly related to improvement in symptoms of breathlessness³.

Clinical Implications and significance of lung volumes and capacities :

FRC, unlike TLC and RV, is an effort-independent maneuver that is determined by the balance of lung and chest wall recoil at relaxed end-expiration. FRC is reduced in restrictive disorders. Increased FRC is considered pathologic. FRC values greater than 120% of predicted values represent air trapping.

TLC may be increased in patients with obstructive defects such as emphysema and decreased in patients with restrictive abnormalities including interstitial lung diseases, chest wall abnormalities and kyphoscoliosis.

An increased RV indicates that, despite maximal expiratory effort, the lungs contain a larger volume of gas than normal. Increased RV often results in an equivalent decrease in VC. Elevated RV may occur during an acute asthmatic episode but is usually reversible. Increased RV is characteristic of emphysema and bronchial obstruction; both may cause chronic air trapping. RV and FRC usually increase together. Measuring lung volumes is critical to understanding changes in FVC. Decreased FVC can be due to restrictive lung diseases, chest wall defects, neuromuscular weakness, suboptimal effort, or severe obstruction, and therefore knowledge of TLC, FRC, and RV is invaluable in sorting out these possibilities. FRC, RV, and TLC are typically decreased in restrictive diseases. Table 3 lists comparative lung volumes for a healthy adult male and for patients with air trapping (as in emphysema), hyperinflation, restriction (as in interstitial lung disease) and neuromuscular weakness (as in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis).

Value	Normal	Air Trapping	Hyperinflation	Restriction	Neuromuscular Weakness
VC (L)	4.80	3.00	4.80	3.00	3.50
FRC (L)	2.40	3.60	3.60	1.50	2.40
RV (L)	1.20	3.00	3.00	0.75	1.50
TLC (L)	6.00	6.00	7.80	3.75	5.00
RV/TLC (%)	20	50	38	20	30

Table 3 : Comparative Lung Volumes for a Healthy Adult Male and Patients with Air Trapping, Hyperinflation, Restriction, and Neuromuscular Weakness

Significance of RV/TLC ratio :

Restrictive processes due to interstitial lung diseases usually cause lung volumes to be reduced equally. Proportional relationships between lung volume compartments, such as the RV/TLC ratio, may be relatively normal in restrictive diseases. In various forms of extra-pulmonary restriction, such as obesity, kyphoscoliosis, or pleural effusion, RV is often less reduced than TLC, resulting in a relatively elevated RV/TLC ratio despite a low TLC. In obstruction, RV and FRC is usually increased (> 120% of predicted) and two different patterns may be observed.

- 1) This increase in RV and FRC may be at the expense of a reduction in VC (see Figure 2) with TLC remaining close to normal in which case the elevated RV/TLC ratio reflects *air trapping*.
- 2) In other cases, RV may increase while VC is preserved, so TLC is greater than predicted (> 120% of predicted). The term *hyperinflation* is used to describe this absolute increase in TLC.

TLC may be either normal or increased in obstructive processes such as asthma, chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, and emphysema.

The RV/TLC ratio describes the percentage of total lung volume that cannot be emptied during expiration. In healthy adults, the RV/TLC ratio may vary from 20% in young adults to 35% in older patients. Values greater than 35% may result from absolute increases of RV (as in emphysema) or from a decrease in TLC because of a loss of VC. A large RV/TLC in the presence of increased TLC is often indicative of hyperinflation. An increased RV/TLC with a normal TLC indicates that air trapping is present. As an indicator of air trapping, the RV/TLC ratio is a weak but statistically significant indicator of outcome after lung volume reduction surgery (LVRS).

Processes that occupy space in the lungs such as edema, atelectasis, neoplasms, or fibrotic lesions may decrease TLC. Other diseases that commonly result in decreased TLC include pulmonary congestion, pleural effusions, pneumothorax, or thoracic deformities. Pure restrictive defects show proportional decreases in most lung compartments as described for FRC and RV.

When the TLC value is less than 80% of predicted or less than the 95% confidence limit, a restrictive process is present. Reduced VC, along with a normal or increased FEV₁/FVC ratio, is suggestive of restriction, but a measurement of TLC is needed to confirm the diagnosis of a restrictive defect.

Figure 2 depicts a comparison of changes in lung volume compartments and VC (*superimposed*) in normal, restrictive, obstructive, and neuromuscular weakness patterns. It shows the following:

- In restrictive patterns, FRC, RV, and VC are all decreased proportionately, resulting in a decrease in the TLC, which defines restriction. RV/TLC ratio is normal
- In obstruction (with air trapping), FRC and RV are both increased at the expense of the VC, and therefore TLC remains relatively unchanged. RV/TLC ratio is increased
- In obstruction (with hyperinflation), FRC and RV are both increased without reduction of VC in which case the TLC increases. RV/TLC ratio is increased
- In neuromuscular weakness, the FRC is normal, but RV and TLC are reduced. RV is often less reduced than TLC, resulting in a relatively elevated RV/TLC ratio despite a low TLC.

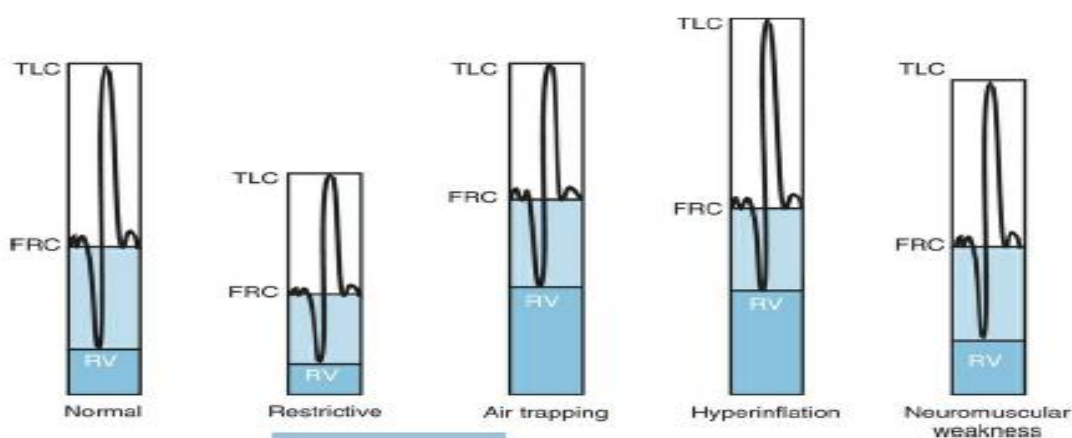


Figure 2: Lung Volumes and Vital Capacity in normal, restrictive, obstructive, and neuromuscular weakness patterns.

A less common pattern is **mixed obstructive-restrictive lung disease**, characterized by a low FEV₁/FVC ratio and a low TLC. This is suggested by simple spirometry when both FEV₁/FVC and FVC are reduced but can only be confirmed by measuring TLC. Measuring the reduction in TLC may allow for more accurate characterization of the concomitant degree of airway obstruction.

Conclusion :

Lung volumes and lung capacities form the foundations of understanding the pathophysiology of lung function in health and disease states. Specialized equipment is required for their measurement. Their significance is paramount in identifying the functional defect and give clues to identification of the type of disease and the severity of involvement.

- Measurement of Lung volumes help to distinguish between obstructive, restrictive and mixed obstructive and restrictive disorders
- They help to assess volume of closed bulla or cyst
- Lung volumes are mandatory requirement in preoperative evaluation of lung volume reduction surgery (LVRS)
- Besides this their roles also exist for assessing response to therapies, prognostication of disease as well as for research.

References :

1. Wanger J, Clausen JL, Coates A, et al. Standardisation of the measurement of lung volumes. Eur Respir J 2005; 26:511.
2. Washko GR, Hunninghake GM, Fernandez IE, et al. Lung volumes and emphysema in smokers with interstitial lung abnormalities. N Engl J Med 2011; 364:897.
3. Washko GR, Martinez FJ, Hoffman EA, Loring SH, Estépar RS, Diaz AA, Scirba FC, Silverman EK, Han MK, Decamp M, Reilly JJ; National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group. Physiological and computed tomographic predictors of outcome from lung volume reduction surgery. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2010 Mar 1;181(5):494-500.

Spirometry Basics : Clinical Applications, Procedure, Quality Control and Interpretation



Mohankumar Thekkinkattil¹

- (1) Senior Consultant and Head, Department of Pulmonary, Critical Care and Sleep Medicine, One Care Medical Centre, Coimbatore
 (2) Editor, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin
 E-mail : mthekinkattil@hotmail.com

Nikhil Sarangdhar²



Introduction :

Sir John Hutchinson invented the first spirometer to measure the volume of air that could be forcefully exhaled from the lungs after complete inflation. He coined the term “vital capacity” for this volume, believing it to be compatible with life. Since then spirometry has evolved into an important tool in the evaluation of respiratory illnesses. Technological advancements have rendered it possible for spirometry to become simple and inexpensive, facilitating its incorporation in the chest clinic. The object of this article is to introduce the reader to the technique, performance and interpretation of spirometry and its day-to-day application in clinical practice. Keeping this objective in mind, this article has been written in a simplified question-answer format for better grasp and understanding.

Why do we perform Spirometry ?

1. To gain additional information or clues in the diagnosis of various respiratory disorders.
2. To detect the disease in early stages and to have an idea about the prognosis, in this, FEV₁ is of great value.
3. To quantify respiratory disease so as to assess disease severity.
4. To assess the growth and lung age of an individual.
5. To evaluate the action (efficacy) of various medications such as bronchodilators, corticosteroids, and anti-fibrotics.

What are the different Clinical Applications of Spirometry ?

1. To identify or exclude a respiratory cause of dyspnoea.
2. Provide objective assessment of lung function that has been affected by a disease process involving the lung parenchyma, airways, interstitium, pulmonary vasculature, pleura, chest wall, diaphragm or components of the respiratory pump mechanism.
3. Identify and differentiate obstructive from restrictive ventilatory defects.
4. Establish persistent airflow limitation (FEV₁/FVC < 70%) in confirming the diagnosis and classifying the severity of COPD.
5. Establish reversibility or airway obstruction and airway hyperresponsiveness in asthma and other airway diseases.
6. Screen and identify smokers at high risk.
7. Prognostication, assessment and monitoring the course of respiratory diseases (Asthma, COPD, Bronchiectasis, ILD, etc.) and others (neuromuscular disorders) over time.
8. Assessment of the efficacy of therapy (bronchodilators) in obstructive lung diseases.
9. Assessment and monitoring patients exposed to noxious environmental agents or on drugs with expected or known pulmonary toxicity.
10. Pre-placement evaluation and occupational surveys (pneumoconiosis and occupational asthma).
11. Estimating the prevalence of asthma and other diseases in population based surveys.
12. Disability assessment and evaluation of degree of impairment.
13. Diagnosis and differentiation (fixed, variable intra-thoracic & extra-thoracic) of upper airway obstruction.
14. Pre-operative fitness evaluation by quantifying lung function in patients scheduled for lung resection, transplant or pulmonary interventions, thoracic and cardiac surgeries, major upper abdominal or orthopaedic surgeries or organ transplantation.
15. Detection of air trapping by slow vital capacity (SVC) versus FVC manoeuvre.
16. Physiologic correlation of lung function with clinical and radiological severity of disease.
17. Evaluation of additional or new indices or variables (eg. FEV₁/FEV₆ vs FEV₁/FVC).
18. Clinical research and derivation of reference values or computation of prediction equations.

What are the different types of spirometers available ?

There are two types of lung function testing equipments - Volume-sensing and flow-sensing. Older spirometers (volume-sensing) measured change in lung volume directly via a closed circuit. Flow was measured as the rate of change in volume per unit time. They were large and bulky as the volume of the device had to be greater than the respired volume of the patient. Later-generation spirometers

(flow-sensing) overcame this difficulty by measuring flow rates either directly or by conversion from flow velocity and deriving volume from flow over a geometric area.

Points	Flow-sensing Spirometers	Volume-sensing Spirometers
Parameter measured	Flow	Volume
Parameter derived	Volume	Flow
Size	Small and compact	Large and bulky
Cost	Less expensive	More expensive
Calibration frequency	Frequently required	Less frequently required (months)
Ease of disinfection	Easy	Difficult
Accuracy	Less	More
Measurement affected by humidity	Yes	No
More suitable for	Clinic	Institution

Table 1 : Comparison of Flow-sensing and Volume-sensing Spirometers

How is Spirometry performed? What are the various parameters used?

In spirometry the subject or patient is made to perform a technically acceptable Forced Vital Capacity (FVC) manoeuvre . Performing a spirometry or FVC manoeuvre in any spirometer starts with the subject sitting upright with a nose clip attached. The subject then inhales rapidly from Functional Residual Capacity (FRC) to Total Lung Capacity (TLC) and then exhales with maximal effort through a mouthpiece into the spirometer until no more air can be exhaled. This is termed as the Forced Vital Capacity (FVC) test. Spirometry was initially represented graphically by the volume-time curve (Figure 1A) and later on also by the flow-volume loop (Figure 1B).

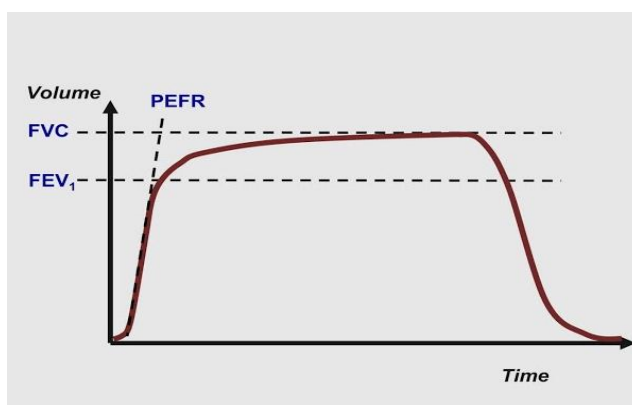


Figure 1 A. Volume-time Curve

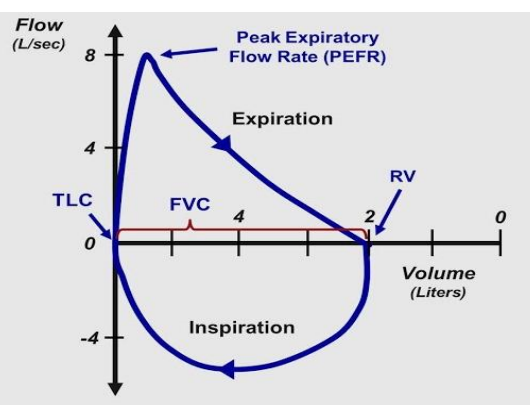


Figure 1 B. Flow-volume Loop

The measurements we usually employ in our day-to-day spirometry practice are :

- 1. FVC (Forced Vital Capacity) :** The maximum volume of air that anyone can exhale with a maximal forced effort, always shown as litres BTPS (body temperature and ambient pressure when saturated with water vapour).
- 2. FEV₁ (Forced Expired Volume, 1 Second) :** The maximal volume of air exhaled in the first second of a forced exhalation starting at TLC (that is after inhaling full), in litres BTPS.
- 3. FEV₁/FVC Ratio :** The ratio between the FEV₁ and the FVC, usually expressed as percentage (i.e. 78% and not 0.78) .
- 4. PEF (Peak Expiratory Flow) :** The maximum flow rate of air exhaled when we perform an FVC. Usually reported in litres/second when derived from an FVC curve. Always remember that this value is expressed in litres/minute when measured with a peak flow meter which is commonly used in asthmatics.

Other measurements with varying degrees of utility which are used are :

- 5. FEF₂₅₋₇₅ :** The average flow rate between 25% and 75% of the exhaled volume. Though it was a measure for airflow in smaller airways quoted for years, now it is known that the FEF₂₅₋₇₅ is poorly reproducible, highly influenced by the FVC volume and usually reduced alongwith FEV₁.
- 6. MEF_{75%}, MEF_{50%}, MEF_{25%} (also known as FEF_{75%}, FEF_{50%}, FEF_{25%}) :** The expiratory flow rate found at 75%, 50% and 25% of the remaining exhaled vital capacity .
- 7. MIF_{75%}, MIF_{50%}, MIF_{25%} (also known as FIF_{75%}, FIF_{50%}, FIF_{25%}) :** The inspiratory flow rate found at 25%, 50% and 75% of the inhaled vital capacity, usually taken from TLC .

The FEF₂₅₋₇₅, MEF_{50%} and Peak Expiratory Flow (PEF) were proposed initially as markers of the presence of airway obstruction but in the long run were found to have pitfalls and are now not seriously used.

The guidelines for the performance of spirometry come primarily from the American Thoracic Society and European Respiratory Society (ATS/ERS) standards for spirometry to assure test quality. But remember that there are also a number of real-world scenarios not included in the ATS/ERS guidelines. These are gained only from experience in performing or interpreting spirometry again and again.

What data do we require before Spirometry and why ?

Parameter	Reason(s)
Patient / Hospital ID No. First Name and Last Name (Surname)	Will prevent results to be attached to a different subject's records. For insurance and for work these are important pieces of information.
Age	Lung volumes and expiratory flow rates tend to peak in early adulthood, approximately between the ages of 18 and 25, and declines thereafter. Those who are aged less than 5 and above 80 will have different values too.
Date of Birth	An incorrect age will cause reference values to be incorrectly calculated, leading to either under- or over-estimation of the percent predicted and LLN.
Gender	Males have larger lungs than females. Remember also that lung function in males declines faster with increasing age than it does in females.
Height	Height is supposed to be measured with a subject's shoes removed, standing straight with their back against the wall. If the subject is unable to stand straight due to musculoskeletal issues (kyphoscoliosis, wheelchair-bound, etc) then height can be estimated from arm-span. There is a relatively linear relationship between a subject's height and their lung capacity, based on populations. Note that individuals who are either very short or very tall will have reference values extrapolated with uncertain accuracy by the computer.
Weight and BMI	Weight and BMI values are almost never a factor in reference equations, however are important in clinical correlation.
Ethnicity	Caucasians are considered to have the largest lung capacity for a specific height; Asians approximately 6% less than this and Blacks approximately 12% less. These differences are mainly genetic, but are also affected by the environment and diet during an individual's developmental stages, and these factors are rapidly changing across the world.
Ambient (Room) temperature	Important as Gas (Air) volumes and pressures change with temperature .

Table 2 : Pre-test Data required for Spirometry

What are the Contra-indications of Spirometry? What precautions are to be observed prior to the test ?

Contra-indications of Spirometry :

1. Unstable cardiovascular status such as myocardial infarction, arrhythmias or stroke within the previous 1 month
2. Recent thoracic, cardiac, ocular, ENT or abdominal surgery within the previous 6 weeks
3. Thoracic, abdominal or cerebral aneurysm
4. Active pulmonary infection or illness (Tuberculosis, etc)
4. Pneumothorax
5. Hemoptysis
6. Uncontrolled hypertension
7. Severe thoracic or abdominal pain that may interfere with test performance
8. Stress incontinence
9. Last trimester of pregnancy

Spirometry should be deferred for a specified time in certain situations, as given below :

Activity	Perform Spirometry after interval of
Meals	2 hours
Exercise	30 minutes
Alcohol intake	4 hours
Tea/ Coffee/ Aerated drink intake	6 hours
Smoking	1 - 2 hours
Inhaled short acting beta-agonist	4 hours
Inhaled short acting anti-cholinergic	6 hours
Inhaled long acting beta-agonist	12 - 18 hours
Inhaled long acting anti-cholinergic	18 - 24 hours
Oral theophylline (SR)	24 hours

Table 3 : Time interval to performing spirometry

What are the methods for a forced expiratory manoeuvre ?

What are the essential steps to be followed while performing the test ?

Forced expiratory manoeuvre can be performed either by closed or open circuit method (Table 4). Both methods are acceptable for clinical use. It should be noted that to achieve best results during the FVC manoeuvre, forced expiration should be performed after a rapid maximal inspiration without any end-inspiratory pause.

Open-Circuit method	Closed-Circuit method
Subject first takes a maximal inspiration from the ambient room air, then inserts the mouthpiece into his/her mouth and exhales forcefully	Subject inhales and exhales exclusively through the mouthpiece of the spirometer without any communication with ambient air
Less commonly practised	More commonly practised
Inspiratory phase is not displayed	Inspiratory phase is displayed
More chance of leak	Less chance of leak
Loss of volume at TLC	No loss of volume at TLC
Cumbersome	Convenient
Minimizes transmission of airborne infection through spirometer	Greater likelihood of transmission of airborne infection through spirometer

Table 4 . Comparison of Open-circuit and Closed-circuit methods for FVC manoeuvre

- The test subject should be sitting upright comfortably in the neutral position (gaze parallel to floor level). The neck should be straight and relaxed as a flexed neck increases airway resistance.
- He/she should be wearing comfortable clothes that allow full expansion of the chest and abdomen and asked to avoid smoking and intake of tea, coffee, alcohol or aerated drinks for a time prior to the test (Table 3).
- If spirometry is being performed for diagnosis then it becomes essential to withhold bronchodilator therapy, either inhaled or oral for a time prior to the test as they may interfere with interpretation (Table 3). In case spirometry is being performed to assess or monitor treatment response bronchodilator therapy need not be withdrawn. Inhaled or oral corticosteroids need not be discontinued.
- Patients wearing well-fitted dentures need not remove them as the differences in FEV₁ and FVC with or without dentures are minimal.
- Routine use of a nose clip (which was hitherto conventional practice) is no longer recommended.
- The patient's age (date of birth), gender, ethnicity, height, weight and other parameters (Table 2) should be entered into the software prior to the test. Measured rather than stated height is preferred, and when height cannot be measured accurately (eg. severe kyphoscoliosis, etc) it should be estimated from the arm span by regression equations or fixed ratio method rather than directly substituting the arm span for height.
- Most computerized spirometers make BTPS (body temperature and ambient pressure when saturated with water vapour) corrections automatically. In case diurnal fluctuations are common, the temperature inside or at the surface of the spirometer should be recorded.
- It is extremely important that the technician supervising the test demonstrates and constantly encourages the patient throughout the procedure, so as to motivate the patient to generate the best possible effort. Failing this, not only will the test remain poor quality, but the end result may also be a falsely abnormal spirometry report.
- **Expiratory and Inspiratory (FVC) manoeuvre :** Instruct (ideally, demonstrate also) the subject to perform the following steps in order :
 - Hold the mouthpiece between lips, thereby creating an effective seal.
 - Breathe in and out for 2-3 tidal breaths.
 - Expire as fast and forcefully as possible and for as long as possible until no more air can be expelled from the lungs.
 - Inspire rapidly and forcefully to maximum capacity.
- Check for repeatability [largest FEV₁ and FVC values within 150 mL of the next largest values (100 mL if VC < 1 L)] after 3 acceptable manoeuvres. If these criteria are not met, perform more manoeuvres as needed (upto a maximum of 8) .

What are Predicted values ? How are they derived ?

Interpretation of spirometry reports requires knowledge of the normal reference values for a given population. All spirometric variables and indices are read as normal or abnormal when compared to predicted values. Expected normal values for pulmonary function are calculated with the help of prediction or reference equations. Predicted values are influenced by age, gender, height, weight and ethnicity and are obtained by large sample or population based lung function test surveys performed on healthy non-smoking individuals in the community taking into account both males and females with wide ranges of age and height.

FEV₁, FVC and PEF increase while FEV₁/FVC decreases with age till about 25 years of age, after which they all decrease, the fall in FEV₁/FVC being due to greater decline in FEV₁ than FVC. FEV₁ and FVC values are highest amongst Caucasians. FVC values are about 10% lower in Indians and 20% lower in Chinese when compared with Caucasians. Approximate conversion factors for adjusting European reference values of FEV₁ and FVC are 0.9 for North Indians and 0.87 for South Indians.

Normal values are considered to be a range rather than an absolute figure, hence the value for any spirometric variable which is either below or above the predicted normal value may not necessarily be abnormal. For spirometry, the lower limit of normal (LLN) is preferred over the upper limit of normal (ULN) as in clinical practice, values lower than normal are encountered more frequently than those higher than normal. Any value below the fifth percentile is considered to be abnormally low and is used to define the LLN. The fifth percentile LLN is estimated to be the predicted value by the equation $1.645 \times \text{SEE}$ (standard error of estimate) of the prediction equation. Most standard spirometers nowadays offer a wide selection of spirometry equations and permit users to input their own prediction equations for a given population as well. The most suitable prediction equation suitable for the test subject should be selected for interpretation and this equation should ideally be mentioned in the report.

What is the importance of the FEV₁/FVC ratio and what are the parameters used to assess it as normal or abnormal?

The FEV₁/FVC ratio is used to determine the presence or absence of airway obstruction. Some points worthy of discussion are as follows

1. Lower Limit of Normal (LLN) : The ATS/ERS recommends the use of the Lower Limit of Normal (LLN) for the FEV₁/FVC ratio as well as the FVC and FEV₁. The LLN is derived from the statistical analysis of a study population and specifically demarcates the bottom 5th percentile, calculated as 1.645 times the Standard Error of the Estimate.

2. A fixed percent of predicted : A percent (%) of predicted, which for the FEV₁/FVC ratio is most commonly either 95% or 90% of predicted has frequently been used as a threshold. This approach is not supported by any official group and has its roots in the ITS Snowbird workshops in the early 1970's and NIH recommendations around that time and followed even now.

3. A fixed ratio (0.70) : The Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) has stated that an absolute (not percent predicted) post-bronchodilator FEV₁/FVC ratio less than 0.70 should be used to indicate the presence of airway obstruction and this is applied to individuals of all ages, genders, heights and ethnicities. Although this is intended for the diagnosis of COPD it has been used in routine clinical spirometry as well.

Which approach is correct?

Should a fixed ratio/percentage or lower limit of normal be used during interpretation?

It is always confusing as to which approach is correct. This subject has been debated for decades and continues to be debated. There are proponents and opponents for each approach and the arguments for and against each approach are as follows :

Parameter	Merits	Demerits
LLN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ The primary decision behind the LLN is that the bottom 5th percentile of any study population has a high probability of being abnormal. This concept is frequently used in biological research and appears to have a significant level of statistical relevance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Because it is dependent upon a specific study it will be different depending on which reference equations are in use. ➤ The decision that the bottom 5% of the population is abnormal is somewhat arbitrary and may underestimate the presence of airway obstruction.
Fixed Percentage (%) Predicted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Easy to remember and use. ➤ Appears to have a reasonable level of clinical relevance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Dependent on specific reference equation and will differ depending on which reference equations are in use. ➤ The population distribution for pulmonary function values is usually considered to be homoscedastic (i.e., equal distribution away from the mean value throughout the range), and this means that a fixed % predicted will tend to overestimate the normal range for younger and taller individuals and underestimate it for older and shorter individuals.
Fixed Ratio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Easy to remember and use. ➤ Not dependent on any specific reference equations. ➤ A reasonable level of clinical relevance when applied correctly (post-bronchodilator spirometry only and for a diagnosis of COPD). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Underestimates airway obstruction in the young and overestimates it in the elderly. ➤ Accuracy of the FEV₁/FVC ratio is dependent on the individual accuracy of the FVC and FEV₁ measurements and this places a limitation on the accuracy of any FEV₁/FVC ratio threshold.

Table 5 : Different Methods (approaches) used to classify spirometric variables as normal or abnormal

Why LLN is the preferred approach ?

It should be noted that any threshold value for the FEV₁/ FVC ratio is arbitrary and there are limitations to any approach. At this time however, the preponderance of evidence and opinion is in favour of the LLN so the recommendation has to be for those interpreting pulmonary function tests to use the LLN for all reference values, including the FEV₁/FVC ratio, unless there are clear and overwhelming reasons not to.

How do we assess FVC Quality ?

The FVC is prone to being underestimated and is this usually due to :

- Suboptimal or erratic patient effort
- Pulmonary disorders that limit full exhalation
- Problems in software algorithms
- Patient leaks

The accuracy of the FVC is usually assessed by the expiratory time and the expiratory flow rate at the end of the test.

Expiratory Time : Lung elastic recoil, respiratory muscle strength and airway conductance all place limits on how fast it is possible for air to be exhaled. These factors are near their maximum values at full inhalation (TLC) and decrease dynamically during exhalation, and exhalation time is a function of these factors. The normal expiratory time has been determined empirically and the ATS/ERS spirometry standards state that subjects should exhale for ≥ 3 seconds in children aged < 10 years and for 6 seconds in subjects aged > 10 years. For more older patients with airways obstruction, exhalation times > 6 seconds are frequently needed. However, exhalation times of > 15 seconds will rarely change clinical decisions. How expiratory time is determined is not specifically defined by the ATS/ERS standards. This means that the end of an expiratory effort is determined is by proprietary software algorithms written by different spirometer manufacturers. Because of this, the accuracy of the reported expiratory time should always be physically verified by inspection of the volume-time curve.

Leaks : Can be difficult to detect but can be suspected when there is a mismatch between inspiratory and expiratory volumes. Expiratory time is usually longer than inspiratory time.

The post-bronchodilator effect : Post-bronchodilator testing should not be performed when the baseline spirometry has notably poor quality or lacks reproducibility. A cough can prevent spirometry being performed with adequate quality, and remember that cough can be a symptom of asthma and other airway diseases. Always clinical assessment has value in performing post-bronchodilator testing even when the baseline spirometry quality is poor. When you look at the nature of reversible airway obstruction, post-bronchodilator increases in FEV₁ are seen more frequently than increases in FVC. Real increase in FVC when it is accompanied by an increase in expiratory time is taken as a signal for a positive bronchodilator response.

What is bronchodilator reversibility testing ? How is it performed ? What is its clinical utility ?

Bronchodilator reversibility (BDR) testing measures lung function prior to and after administration of a fast and short-acting bronchodilator to assess reversibility of airflow obstruction. It should be performed at baseline in all patients with suspected airflow obstruction. Preparation, precautions and contra-indications of BDR testing are the same as those for spirometry. After performing baseline spirometry, the manoeuvre is repeated 15 - 20 minutes after administration of a short and fast-acting bronchodilator (4 puffs of 100 μg salbutamol or 50 μg levosalbutamol), preferably via a pressurized metered dose inhaler (pMDI) or nebulizer. In patients whom salbutamol or levosalbutamol are contraindicated, 8 puffs of 20 μg ipratropium may be delivered as an alternative and spirometry repeated after 30 minutes. BDR is expressed as the numerical increment (absolute change) in FEV₁ or as percentage improvement in FEV₁ over the baseline value as follows :

$$\text{BDR (\% improvement)} = \frac{\text{FEV}_1(\text{post-bronchodilator}) - \text{FEV}_1(\text{baseline})}{\text{FEV}_1(\text{baseline})} \times 100$$

Though different reversibility criteria have been proposed by several guidelines, BDR is accepted to be present when an increase in FEV₁ and/or FVC of 12 % and 200 mL (both should be present) above the baseline value occur following administration of a short and fast-acting bronchodilator.

BDR is usually used to differentiate Asthma and Asthma-COPD overlap (ACO) (BDR present) from COPD (BDR absent). However, as a stand-alone test it should not be used to differentiate between asthma and COPD, though it may be used to corroborate a diagnosis of asthma. It may be noted that some cases of severe persistent asthma, BDR may be absent.

How do we ensure Quality while Recording and Reporting Spirometry ?

Spirometry is recorded numerically (absolute values) as well as graphically. Graphic recordings include Volume versus time (Spirogram or Volume-time curve; Figure 1A) and Flow versus volume (called Flow -volume curve when only expiratory flow is recorded or Flow-volume loop when both expiratory and inspiratory flow are recorded; Figure 1B).

Standardization of recording and reporting numerical and graphical data :

All flows should be recorded in litres per second (L/sec) under BTPS (body temperature and ambient pressure when saturated with water vapour) conditions. FEV₁, FVC and all volumes and capacities should be recorded in litres, accurate to 2 decimal places. Both the Flow-Volume Loop and Volume-Time graph must be recorded and displayed.

Flow volume loops (curves) must be imaged in real-time for quality control. The aspect ratio is 2 flow units per volume unit. All graphs should be according to scale as below :

Parameter	Instrument (Panel) display		Hard copy (Print)	
	Resolution	Scale factor	Resolution	Scale factor
Flow	0.2 L/sec	2.5 mm/L/sec	0.1 L/sec	5 mm/L/sec
Volume	0.05 L	5 mm/L	0.025 L	10 mm/L
Time	0.2 sec	10 mm/sec	0.2 sec	20 mm/sec

Table 6 : Recommended graphical scale factors for Flow, Volume and Time

Criteria to maintain quality of spirometric and peak expiratory flow (PEF) manoeuvres :

As in any test report, prior to interpretation, it is crucial to ensure that the test is of acceptable quality. This is only possible when the data values of the variables recorded are accurate. Acceptability criteria for spirometry can be broadly divided as visual (inspection) criteria and numerical (computer calculated) criteria (Table 7.) On visual inspection, the flow-volume and volume-time curves should demonstrate a quick and smooth start, maximal effort throughout the blow culminating in a peak and smooth progression of flow without interruptions like coughing, hesitation, abrupt cessation, etc. Only visually acceptable spirometry should be considered for numerical acceptability. Individual spirometry can be considered acceptable when the within-manoeuvre acceptability criteria are met. Test Reproducibility assesses how well the results of individual technically acceptable manoeuvres in any spirometry session match each other and is defined to be present when the largest FEV₁ and FVC values are within 150 mL of the next largest values (or within 100 mL of the next largest values in case VC is ≤ 1 L). Both volumes (FEV₁ and FVC) should be reported in liters, to two decimal places and all flows should be reported in liters per second, to two decimal places. Both the flow-volume loop as well as the volume-time curve should be obtained and reported as per the standard ATS/ERS guidelines.

Spirometry	Peak Expiratory Flow
<p>Within-manoeuvre :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Effort should be maximal, uninterrupted and smooth • Should be free from the following artefacts and errors : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Cough (during first second or later) - Glottic closure - Non-maximal effort - Obstructed mouthpiece - Early termination or cut-off - Leak <p>Between-manoeuvre (repeatability criteria) : After 3 acceptable spirometry are obtained, following criteria should be met :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The difference between 2 largest values of both FEV₁ and FVC should not exceed 150 mL (100 mL for subjects whose FVC ≤ 1L) • If both criteria (FEV₁ and FVC) are not met, testing should be continued till both criteria are met in subsequent manoeuvres or a total of 8 attempts have been performed or the subject is too exhausted to continue with further testing. <p>Start-of-test : Extrapolated volume < 5% of FVC or < 150 mL, whichever is greater.</p> <p>End-of-test : Volume-time curve shows no change (< 25 mL) or a plateau in volume for at least 1 second and the subject has exhaled for at least 6 seconds or cannot continue further exhalation.</p>	<p>Within-manoeuvre :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No hesitation • No cough • No mouth leaks <p>Between-manoeuvre :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At least 3 acceptable FVC manoeuvres should be performed. • The largest 2 of 3 acceptable manoeuvres should be within 40 L/min (0.67 L/sec) of each other. <p>Up to 2 additional manoeuvres can be performed if the above criteria are not met</p>

Table 7 . Criteria to maintain quality of spirometric and peak expiratory flow (PEF) manoeuvres :

Assessment of the Flow-volume loop (FVL) :

Visual inspection of flow-volume loops is essential not only to confirm quality of the procedure but also to provide clues that aid in the diagnosis of various respiratory diseases, as specific flow-volume loop contours are often closely associated with specific lung disorders. A small concave or “scooped-out” curve suggests obstruction (Figures 3A, 3B, 3C), whereas a small but normal looking curve with a steep slope suggests restriction (Figure 3 E). Small and flat curves either on expiratory or inspiratory limbs or both suggest upper airway obstruction (Figures 3F, 3G, 3J).

ATS/ERS spirometry standards encourage the selection of the largest FVC and FEV₁ even when these come from different tests. There are however, no guidelines for selecting the most appropriate flow-volume loop. The FVC may be selected from another effort than the selected flow-volume loop due to flaws specific to this choice. This happens due to computer interpretation. Normal standards for spirometry includes a graphical illustration (printout) of a flow-volume loop (Figure 2) when discussing normal flow-volume loops, but there is no definition of what constitutes normality. Remember that as there is no time axis in a flow-volume loop, it is not possible to determine FEV₁ or FEV₆ from a flow-volume loop unless the software includes a marker for these values.

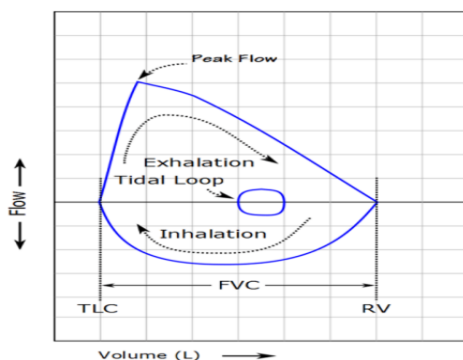


Figure 2 : A Normal Flow-Volume Loop

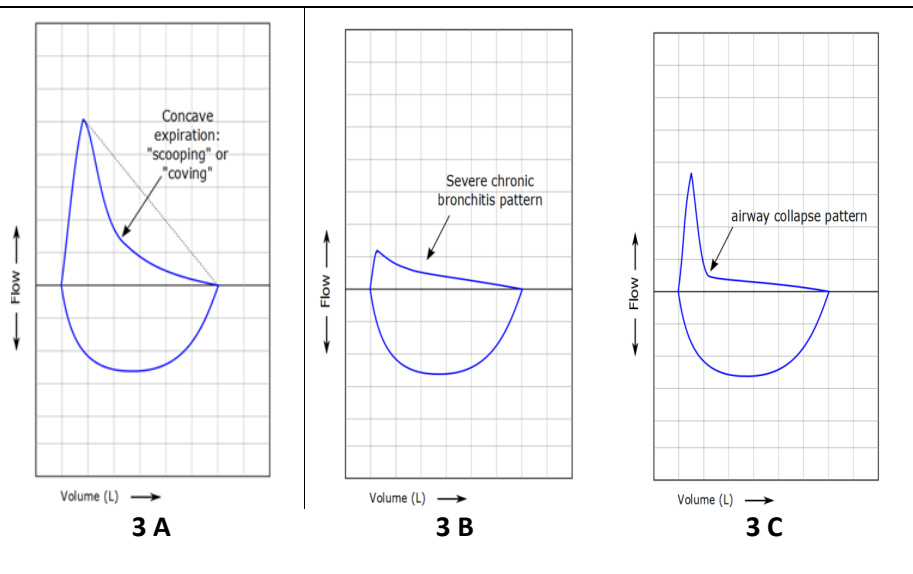
A normal flow-volume loop has usually been considered as one that has a convex or straight profile between peak flow and the end of exhalation (Figure 2), but this is too simplistic. Because the flow-volume loop normally becomes more concave with increasing age the age of the subject also needs to be considered. A concave flow-volume loop in a young individual likely indicates the presence of airway obstruction whereas in an elderly individual the same flow-volume loop may well be normal.

Abnormal FVL patterns and their clinical interpretation (Table 8 and Figures 3 A - N) :

Signs of Airway Obstruction

Flow-volume loops typically become more concave both with increasing age as well as an increase in the severity of airway obstruction. This concavity has been variously termed “Scooping”, “Coving” or “Scalloping” (Figures 3A and 3B).

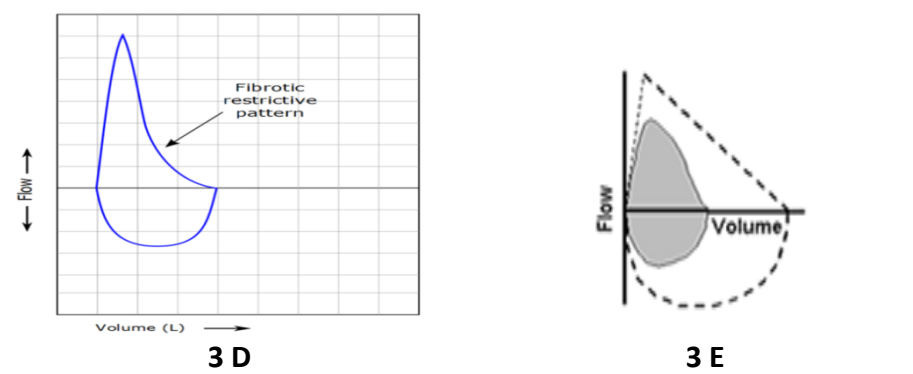
When airway obstruction is severe, this inward concavity can develop a distinct inflection point, this contour has been termed by researchers as the “airway collapse pattern” and is usually associated with emphysema (Figure 3C).



Signs suggestive of Restriction

When restriction is due to fibrosis peak flow is often preserved until lung volumes are significantly reduced. Because the vital capacity is reduced this appears as a tall, narrow flow-volume loop (Figure 3D).

However, there are multiple causes for restriction, and peak flow is not preserved in all of these. An individual with restrictive lung disease may also have a normal looking flow-volume loop that is just reduced in overall size (Figure 3E).

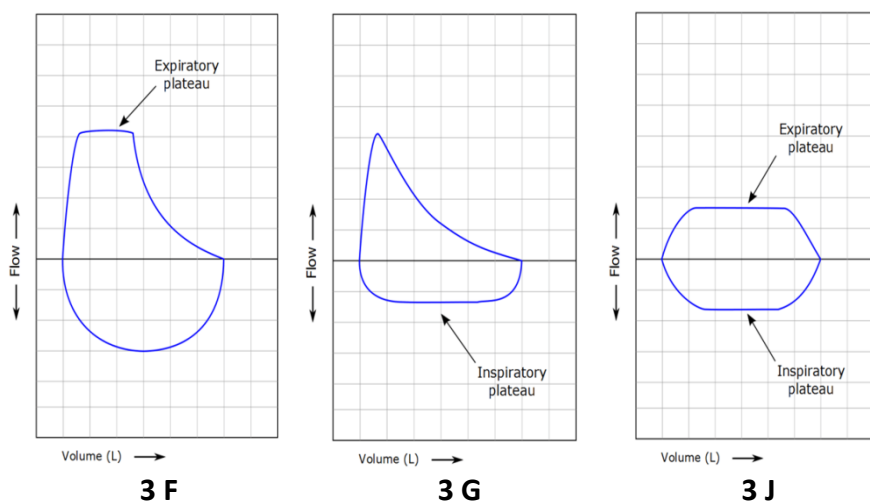


Upper Airway Obstruction

Certain types of airway disorders can also affect the flow-volume loop contour. Paralyzed vocal cords or enlarged goitre or a tumour pressing against the airway can limit flow rates.

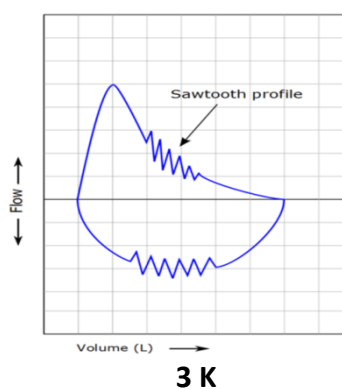
A variable flow limitation will only appear in either the expiratory or inspiratory portion of the flow-volume loop, and which portion of the flow-volume loop the limitation appears will indicate whether the flow limitation is intrathoracic or extrathoracic.

Intrathoracic flow limitations will appear only during exhalation (Figure 3F), whereas extrathoracic flow limitations will appear only during inhalation (Figure 3G). When a plateau is present on both inspiration and expiration (Figure 3J) then the obstruction is a fixed component of the subject's airway.



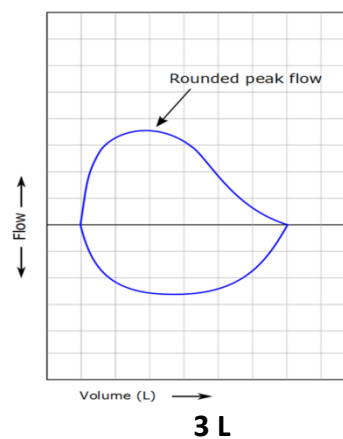
Saw-tooth Pattern

A flow-volume loop can have a "saw-tooth" appearance. This can occur during exhalation or inhalation (Figure 3K). The "saw-tooth" pattern is usually generated either by airflow disturbances in the upper airway or from tremors of the respiratory muscles. It can be associated with sleep apnoea, obesity, upper airway injury and some neurological disorders but is, by itself, neither a reliable diagnostic sign of any of these disorders nor does its presence or absence indicate the severity of the disorder.



Inadequate Effort

A rounded peak flow can be an indication of an inadequate subject effort (Figure 3L).



Early termination of, or Pause in Exhalation

An abrupt drop in expiratory flow usually indicates an early termination of exhalation (Figure 3M).

A notch in a flow-volume loop indicates a cough or other pause in exhalation (Figure 3N). Since the FEV₁/FVC ratio is usually between 0.70 and 0.85, if this notch appears during the first three-quarters of the exhalation then the pause likely affects the FEV₁.

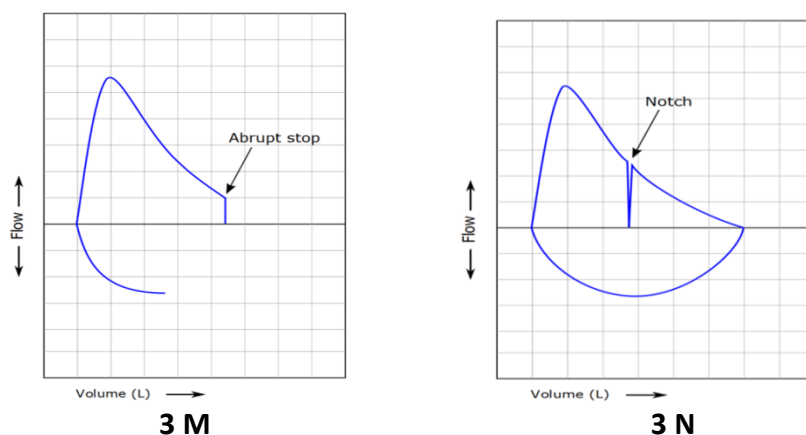


Table 8 and Figures 3 A - N. Abnormal Flow-volume loop patterns

How do we Interpret a Basic Spirometry report ?

The Spirometry report may either be Normal , OR :

1. Diagnose an obstructive ventilatory defect
2. Suggest a restrictive ventilatory defect
3. Suggest a mixed ventilatory defect

Though FEV₁ was first described in 1949 by Tiffeneau, the basic algorithm for interpreting a spirometry using the FEV₁/FVC ratio was developed by Gaensler in 1951. A reduction in the FEV₁/FVC ratio has proven to be a reliable monitor to look for the presence of airway obstruction. This approach has largely remain unchanged over the years.

- ***In practice, the interpretation of spirometry revolves around 3 variables FEV₁, FVC and FEV₁/FVC . Most of the other variables recorded are not essential as they provide little additional information to aid clinical decision making.***
- ***To make it simple, all you need to interpret spirometry is to know the FEV₁/FVC ratio and whether the FVC is normal or reduced.***
- ***But remember, this may overlook some issues about test quality and the reliability of the FVC, FEV₁ and FEV₁/FVC ratio.***

Confirmation of having obtained 3 acceptable good quality FVC loops is of paramount importance. Spirometry interpretation revolves on 3 variables : FEV₁, FVC and FEV₁/FVC, for which values above and below the respective LLNs are interpreted confidently. Needless to say, spirometry needs to be interpreted in the clinical context to supplement clinical information and other tests to make decisions guiding management of the case.

A systematic and step-wise approach can be followed :

1. Ensure that the criteria for quality control are met.
2. Inspect the Flow-Volume loops and Volume-Time curves. Check whether abnormal shapes are suggestive of obstruction, restriction, or upper airway obstruction.
3. Look at the FVC and the FEV₁ /FVC ratio.
4. If FEV₁/FVC < 70% → Obstructive pattern. Grade the severity based on FEV₁.
5. If FEV₁/FVC is normal and FVC < 80% → Suggestive of Restrictive pattern. Grade the severity based on FVC and consider additional measurement of TLC.
6. A normal FVC in the presence of an obstructive defect almost rules out a superimposed restrictive defect, however, a low FVC in the presence of an obstructive defect is likely to be due to severe obstruction alone. Hence it is recommended to measure TLC to confirm or rule out restriction.
7. Perform bronchodilator reversibility (BDR) testing.
8. Only a spirometry report with normal values of FEV₁, FVC and FEV₁/FVC should be reported as normal.

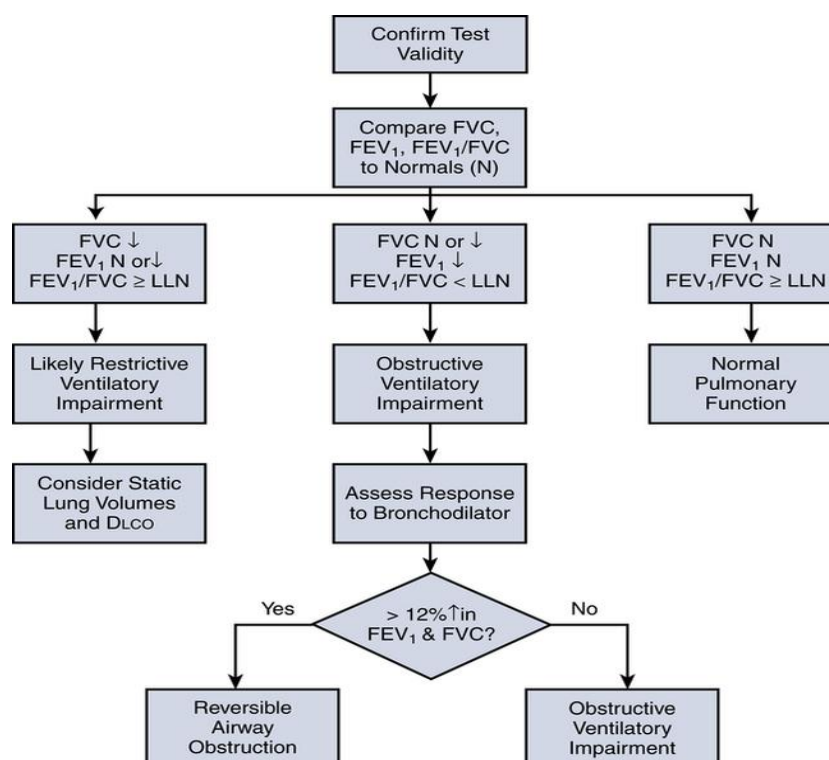


Figure 4. Algorithm for Spirometry Interpretation

How to Diagnose and Grade the Severity of Obstruction ?

Airflow obstruction can occur due to a variety of diseases like asthma, COPD, ACO, bronchiectasis and cystic fibrosis, bronchiolitis, airway tumours and others. It is characterised by expiratory flow limitation which is suggested by the following changes :

- Reduced FEV₁
- Normal or reduced VC or FVC
- Reduced FEV₁/FVC ratio (< 0.7)
- Concavity of the expiratory limb of the flow- volume loop

For spirometry results that reveal airway obstruction, the question is whether the presence or amount of obstruction is overestimated because of testing errors. An algorithmic approach towards interpretation is as follows (Figure 5).

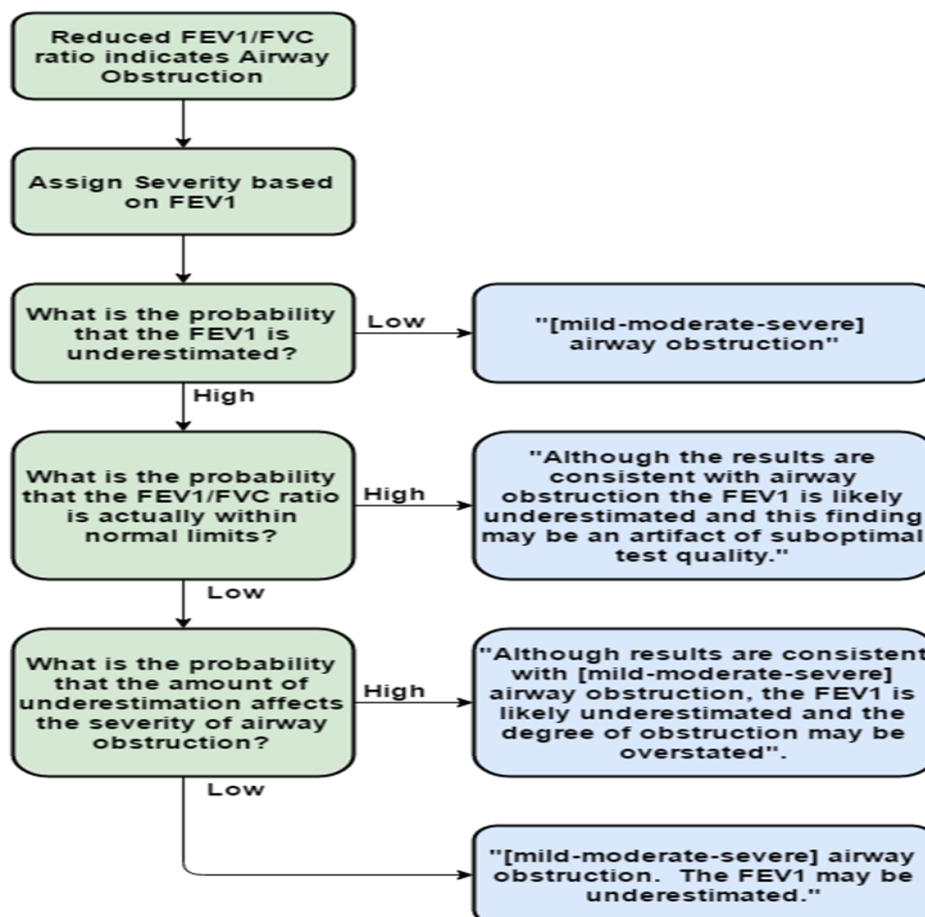


Figure 5. An algorithmic approach towards interpreting a spirometry report showing obstruction

Once it has been determined that airway obstruction is present its severity is determined by the percent predicted FEV₁ (Table 9)

FEV ₁ percent predicted (% pred)	Severity of Obstruction
≥ 80 %	Normal
50 – 79 %	Mild
30 – 49 %	Moderate
< 30 %	Severe

Table 9. Grading the Severity of Airflow Obstruction

A more detailed staging (Table 10) is also described in literature, but is uncommonly followed.

FEV ₁ percent predicted (% pred)	Severity of Obstruction
≥ 70 %	Mild
≥ 60 %, < 70 %	Moderate
≥ 50 %, < 60 %	Moderately Severe
≥ 35 %, < 50 %	Severe
< 35 %	Very Severe

Table 10. Grading the Severity of Airflow Obstruction

When both restriction and obstruction are present at the same time, there are no particular guidelines for assigning severity because the decrease in FEV₁ may also be (at least partly) due to restriction. One possible approach for this circumstance is to use the percent predicted of the FEV₁/FVC ratio instead (Table 11) . This approach dates from the ITS intermountain conference in the early 1970's however, it is not shown in the ATS/ERS interpretation guidelines.

FEV ₁ / FVC ratio percent predicted (% pred)	Severity of Obstruction
≥ 85 %, < 95 %	Mild
≥ 65 %, < 85 %	Moderate
< 65%	Severe

Table 11. Grading the Severity of Airflow Obstruction in the presence of a restrictive defect

How to Diagnose a Restrictive Ventilatory defect ?

The presence of a spirometric abnormality suggestive of Restriction indicates a disease process causing reduction in lung volume due to loss or destruction of functional lung parenchyma and can occur in various disorders, namely pleural, pulmonary parenchymal and interstitial, chest wall, musculoskeletal and neuromuscular disorders, lung resection or collapse, pneumonia or pulmonary oedema. The hallmark of a restrictive ventilatory defect is reduction in the Total lung capacity (TLC) . Since this requires measurement of the total volume of air in the lungs at a given state of inflation, it cannot be estimated by spirometry. Hence Restriction cannot be diagnosed by spirometry alone but may be suggested by the following features on spirometry :

- Reduced FVC
- Normal or high FEV₁/FVC ratio
- Relatively high PEFR
- An otherwise normal shape of the flow -volume loop

FVC can be reduced for a variety of reasons and restriction should never be diagnosed solely on the results from spirometry. Lung volume measurements are always required to verify the presence of a reduced lung capacity. When restriction is present there is often correlation between a reduced FVC and a reduced TLC, but it is not exact. The sensitivity of reduced FVC in predicting decreased TLC ranges from 59 to 88%. However the negative predictive value of a reduced FVC along with a normal FEV₁/FVC ratio in excluding restriction is 90%. It should be kept in mind that FVC is highly dependent on patient performance and may be reduced due to air trapping in moderate to severe airways obstruction. For all these reasons, a reduced FVC can only suggest and cannot diagnose a restrictive abnormality by itself. A systematic approach towards diagnosing a restrictive defect is as follows (Figure 6) :

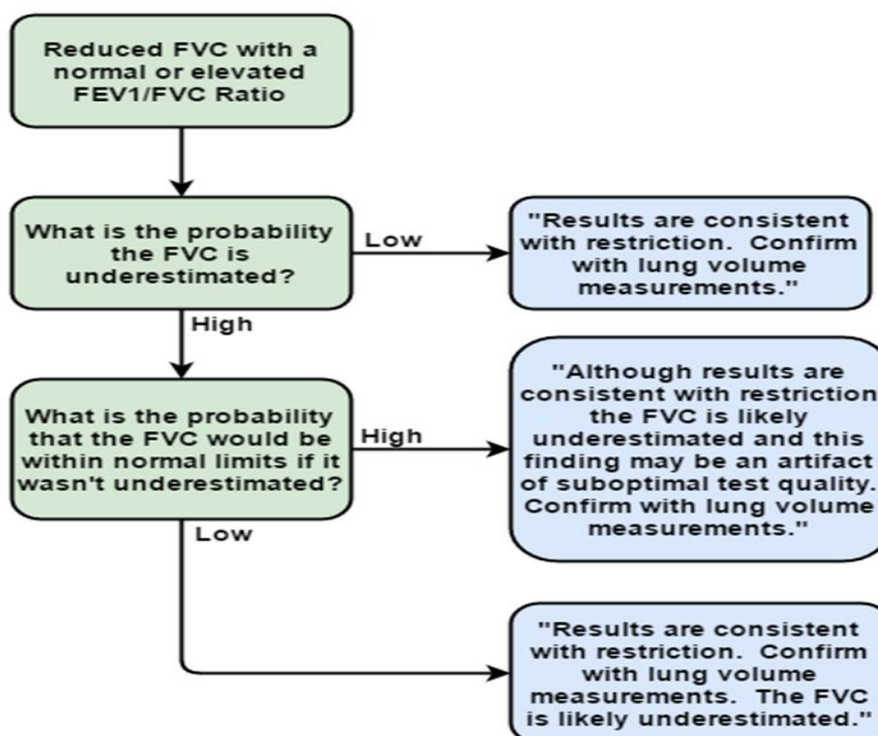


Figure 6. An algorithmic approach towards interpreting a spirometry report suggestive of restriction

The ATS/ERS guidelines do not explicitly recommend grading the FVC nor do they provide any approach to assess the severity of a reduced FVC. However, they do not forbid doing so either. An approach that is widely used for grading FVC on the basis of percent predicted would be as follows (Table 12) :

FVC percent predicted (% pred)	Severity
≥ LLN or 80 %	Normal
≥ 60 % and < LLN or 80 %	Mild
≥ 40 % and < 60 %	Moderate
< 40 %	Severe

Table 12. Grading the Severity of Reduced FVC

A more nuanced version of this would be as follows (Table 13) :

FVC percent predicted (% pred)	Severity
≥ LLN or 80 %	Normal
≥ 65 % and < LLN or 80 %	Mild
≥ 60 % and < 65 %	Mild to Moderate
≥ 45 % and < 60 %	Moderate
≥ 40 % and < 45 %	Moderate to Severe
≥ 20 % and < 40 %	Severe
< 20 %	Very Severe

Table 13. Grading the Severity of Reduced FVC

The severity of restriction can be graded according to the FVC as follows (Table 14) :

FVC percent predicted (% pred)	Severity of Restriction
> 80 %	Normal
60 – 79 %	Mild
40 – 59 %	Moderate
< 40 %	Severe

Table 14. Grading the Severity of Restriction

How to proceed when dealing with a spirometry report suggestive of a mixed ventilatory defect ?

Coexistence of an obstructive defect (reduced FEV₁/FVC) along with a restrictive defect (reduced TLC) constitutes a mixed ventilatory defect. Spirometry can suggest mixed defect when both FEV₁/FVC and FVC are reduced, however it should be kept in mind that in the presence of severe obstruction FVC may be decreased due to air trapping or hyperinflation thereby causing ‘false normalization’ of the FEV₁/FVC ratio mimicking a restrictive defect. Hence measurement of TLC is necessary to confirm the diagnosis.

Impairment of pulmonary function (obstructive or restrictive) can be categorized based on the FEV₁ (Table 15) :

FEV ₁ percent predicted (% pred)	Severity of Impairment of Pulmonary Function
≥ 70 %	Mild
50 – 69 %	Moderate
< 50 %	Severe

Table 15. Grading the Severity of Impairment of Pulmonary Function

What is the role of the Flow-volume loop in diagnosis of upper airway obstruction ?

The flow-volume loop always provides some information about the quality of the FVC and FEV₁ measurements, but the contour of the flow-volume can also be associated with certain airway disorders. These disorders are relatively uncommon but when their presence is noted, this fact should be included in an interpretation (Figure 7).

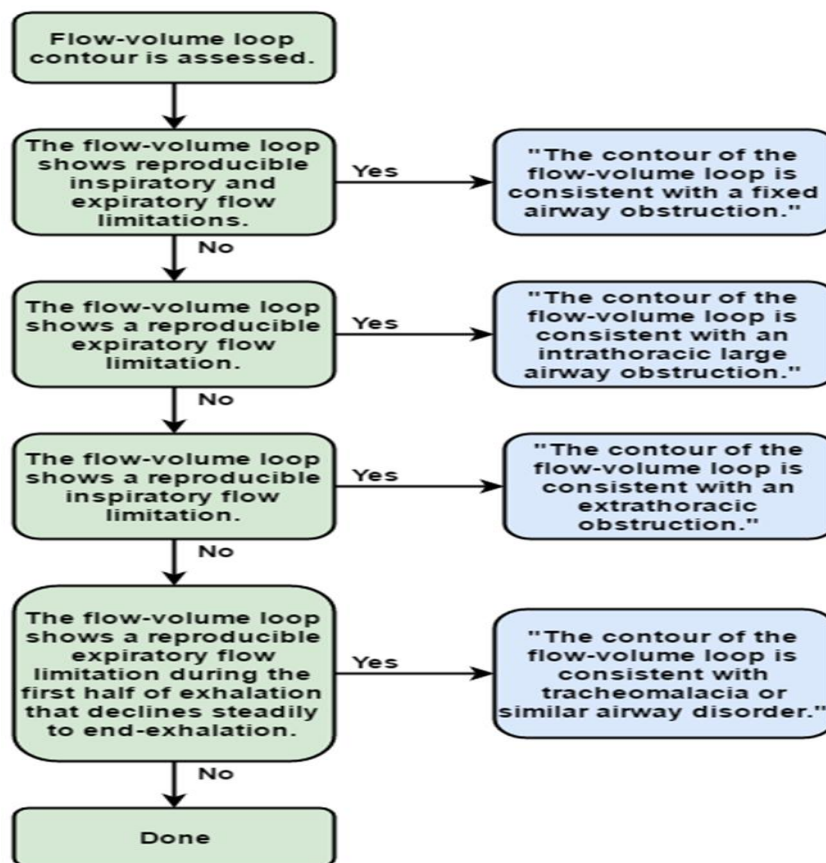


Figure 7 : An algorithmic approach towards interpreting a spirometry report suggestive of upper airway obstruction based on the contour of the Flow-volume Loop

(For detailed information the reader may refer to an article exclusively written on this topic in this issue of Lung Bulletin)

While interpreting results, it is important to remember that there will always be a degree of within-person variability, so that by chance a measurement may be just outside the normal range on one occasion, but just within it on the next. It is also essential to take other clinical information into account, and to weigh the consequences of an erroneous false positive against that of a missed diagnosis. Caution is required when interpreting results which lie close to the somewhat arbitrary cut offs between health and suspected disease, especially when results are limited to a single test.

A lung function test must never be used in isolation to define disease severity and prognosis; a number of factors, including quality of life, are likely to contribute, and the ideal approach remains to be determined. Neither % predicted nor Z-scores used in isolation can answer those fundamental questions.

ATS/ERS guidelines mention that a change of +/- 12% and +/- 0.20 L in FVC or FEV₁ within a period of < 1 year should be considered significant. Changes of +/- 15% in FVC or FEV₁ within a period of > 1 year (with a possible maximum of 5 years) should probably also be considered significant. For longer periods, a relative change in the FVC or FEV₁ percent predicted (i.e., a change from 50% of predicted to 40% of predicted is a 20% change) of +/- 15% should likely be considered significant.

What are the practices to be followed for Spirometry Calibration, Disinfection and Training ?

Calibration practices : As with all machines, the accuracy of a spirometer is likely to change with time and after frequent use, necessitating calibration to ensure accurate readings. Portable or hand-held spirometers should confirm to a certain level of accuracy (closeness of measured value to a standard value) as well as precision (closeness of 2 or more measurements to each other). It is recommended that accuracy should be within ± 0.2 L/sec or ± 5 % for flow and ± 0.05 L or ± 3 % for volume. Spirometers can be calibrated either mechanically or biologically. Mechanical calibration is usually performed using a large 3 litre calibration syringe which should be accurate to ± 15 mL or ± 0.5 % of scale. The volume recorded by the spirometer should be within ± 3.5% (3% accuracy limit for spirometric measurement plus 0.5% accuracy limit of calibration syringe) of the volume injected by the syringe and close to 3 L over the whole range of flow (2.90 to 3.10 L) . Minimum 3 calibrations should be done, each at different flow rates. Another method involves injecting a known volume of air into an empty spirometer till the maximum volume of the spirometer is reached, following which the cumulative volume injected is tallied with that sensed by the spirometer. Biological calibration is done by performing periodic FVC manoeuvres on the same healthy person who does not suffer from underlying lung disease, in whom the normal variation in FEV₁ and FVC should not exceed 10%. In flow-sensing spirometers calibration should be performed at least 3 times with differing flow rates. It is recommended that volume validation be carried out daily for flow-sensing and at least weekly for volume-sensing spirometers. Leak testing is done for calibration syringes and volume-sensing spirometers by applying constant pressure to the spirometer occluded at the

mouthpiece for 1 minute and checking for any leaks. Standard FVC curves for use as test signals designed to mimic clinical conditions have also been developed by the ATS and are meant primarily for spirometry equipment manufacturers and researchers.

Disinfection practices : Although spirometers have not been implicated in the transmission of infection, microorganisms have been isolated from mouthpieces, filter and the tubing through which patients breathe. Hence the equipment must be disinfected periodically or a disposable filter should be used. Mouthpieces used should ideally be disposable or cleaned between patients if they are not disposable. Standard airborne infection control practices are also applicable to the spirometry lab. Hand hygiene practices should be followed by technicians and lab staff. Floors and work surfaces should be cleaned daily with detergent solutions before patients arrive. Patients should be evaluated for active infection before the procedure. The manufacturer's user manual provided along with the device should be followed for cleaning and disinfecting equipment.

Training practices : Formal training of the physician and technician performing spirometry is necessary to understand the basic practice and ensure quality of spirometry. Training also familiarizes personnel with technical and practical aspects of spirometry technique, equipment, procedure, measurements, calibration and quality control besides imparting basic knowledge of pulmonary physiology essential to the performance of spirometry. Refresher training should also be conducted every 3 to 5 years. The Indian Chest Society and National College of Chest Physicians (India) conduct training courses on a periodic basis annually and have also formulated joint guidelines for spirometry recently in 2019.

Can Spirometry be performed in Young Children ?

Spirometry is gaining importance as a tool for the diagnosis, assessment and management of pulmonary diseases in children. Spirometric assessment of pulmonary function in young children with early onset of respiratory disease assists in :

1. Diagnosis of Respiratory disease.
2. Monitoring of disease course and progression (e.g. predicting the development of asthma in young children with recurrent wheezing).
3. Evaluation of therapeutic interventions early in the course of disease (e.g. Inhalers in obstructive airway diseases).
4. Treatment modification and efficacy of therapy (e.g. dose of ICS in asthma).
5. Documentation of lung function with age and anthropometric variables for population based studies/surveys or derivation of reference equations.

Spirometry, though extremely useful for the diagnosis, assessment and monitoring of respiratory disease is often difficult to perform on very young or preschool children aged between 2 to 6 years. Important practical and technical difficulties which arise while performing spirometry in children include :

1. Apprehension of the young child in unfamiliar surroundings.
2. Inadequate understanding of verbal communication while explaining instructions for the forced expiratory manoeuvre.
3. Physical discomfort and agitation produced when the mouthpiece of the transducer is inserted in the mouth or nose clip on the nose .
4. Short attention and performance span and poor effort or cooperation while performing the manoeuvre. Younger children tend to become easily distracted, bored, frustrated and tired if they are unable to comply with the forced expiratory manoeuvre or if the test session is prolonged which limits the number of good efforts that can be successfully obtained from them.
5. In contrast to adults and older children, younger children have relatively smaller lungs and larger airways in proportion to lung volume, as a result of which forced expiration is completed faster in a shorter time, often well before the recommended 6 seconds . This makes it difficult for them to exhale completely with consistent maximal expiratory effort to residual volume or inhale to TLC .
6. Paucity of population data for spirometric variables in children leading to difficulty while computing standard predicted (reference) values or developing reference equations .

In spite of all these issues , there is growing evidence that young children might still be able to perform spirometry satisfactorily, however it may not be possible for them to fulfil all quality criteria enumerated in spirometry guidelines. As explained before, children tend to complete forced expiration in a short time, hence the reliability of FEV₁ as a parameter of airway obstruction in them is questionable. Recent studies have also explored the utility of forced expiratory volume in 0.5 seconds (FEV_{0.5}) and 0.75 seconds (FEV_{0.75}) as substitutes for FEV₁ for young children, with varying results.

The operator or technician should express patience with the child while explaining and performing the test as often repeated instructions may be necessary to make the child comprehend the performance and implications of a forced expiratory manoeuvre. The child should

be explained that the test is being performed to find out how their breathing can be made better. If possible, spirometry should be scheduled at a time of the day when the child is usually attentive and not hungry or tired.

Children can be encouraged to perform a forced expiratory manoeuvre by a variety of methods. The child may be encouraged to blow a toy whistle, horn or trumpet to practice forced expiration with maximal effort before the test. Attractive 'incentive' spirometry programs in the form of real-time interactive cartoons, videos or games can be used to stimulate the child's interest, attention and effort while performing the forced expiratory manoeuvre. The incentive in this case is often the objective of the cartoon or game which is achieved if the child successfully performs a complete forced expiration with maximal effort (e.g. blowing out all candles on a cake (Figure 8) or knocking down all tenpins in a bowling game for effort and playing part or a whole of a popular short nursery rhyme for time). As in adults, visual inspection of the flow-volume loop is essential for quality control.



Figure 8. Computerized Incentive Spirometry Program

(Object : All candles on the cake will be extinguished if the child performs a forced expiration with maximal effort)

What are the important issues to be kept in mind regarding Spirometry during the COVID-19 pandemic ?

- Spirometry and other pulmonary function test (PFT) manoeuvres can promote coughing and aerosol generation and could lead to spread of Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19; SARS-CoV-2) by infected patients.
- It is difficult to screen patients for active COVID-19 infection, particularly those with underlying respiratory symptoms, and infected but asymptomatic patients can also shed the virus.
- Expert recommendations for pulmonary function testing during the COVID-19 pandemic mention that spirometry and other pulmonary function tests should be limited to patients in whom results are essential to effect immediate management decisions crucial towards diagnosis or treatment. Use of nebulizers to administer bronchodilators or methacholine should be avoided.
- Measures to prevent the spread of COVID-19 infection should include following hand hygiene and donning personal protective equipment [(PPE) - gloves, gown, face mask and shield] for staff and anyone else in the testing space (e.g., interpreters). N-95 masks or powered air purifying respirators (PAPR) are preferred over surgical masks.
- Patients should be brought to the spirometry testing room or lab using an approach that avoids queuing or grouping individuals in a waiting area and that allows adequate time between patients for sufficient air exchange.
- Enhanced cleaning of the testing area should be performed in between patients and/or tests.

(For detailed information the reader may refer to an article exclusively written on this topic in this issue of Lung Bulletin)

Summary :

A simplified way of looking at your basic spirometry is done. It is always better to gain experience by looking at the flow volume loops again and again. Arbitrary differences in the way lung function are expressed and interpreted may result in mismanagement of patients as well as hinder our understanding of the global burden of lung disease.

Use of the All-age (3–95 years), multi-ethnic Global Lung Function Initiative (GLI) spirometry equations, which provide well defined lower limits of normal, may allow global standardisation of how spirometry results are interpreted. This may avoid errors that have occurred in the past due to overdependence on fixed thresholds to diagnose lung disease or extrapolation of prediction equations in either very young or elderly patients.

PFT technologists, technicians, Respiratory Clinicians and referring physicians should be aware of which reference equations are used to interpret PFTs, and whether these are appropriate for their patient population, paying particular attention to whether prediction modules are used and the potential impact of any break-points on interpretation of results.

References :

1. Aggarwal AN, Agarwal R, Dhooria S, Prasad KT, Sehgal IS, Muthu V, *et al.* Joint Indian Chest Society - National College of Chest Physicians (India) guidelines for spirometry. *Lung India* 2019;36:S1-35.
2. Miller MR, Hankinson J, Brusasco V, *et al.* Standardisation of spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26:319.
3. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, *et al.* Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26:948.
4. Quanjer PH, Stanojevic S, Cole TJ, *et al.* Multi-ethnic reference values for spirometry for the 3-95-yr age range: the global lung function 2012 equations. *Eur Respir J* 2012; 40:1324.
5. Stanojevic S, Wade A, Stocks J, *et al.* Reference ranges for spirometry across all ages: a new approach. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2008; 177:253.
6. Robbins DR, Enright PL, Sherrill DL. Lung function development in young adults: is there a plateau phase? *Eur Respir J* 1995; 8:768.
7. Kerstjens HA, Rijcken B, Schouten JP, Postma DS. Decline of FEV1 by age and smoking status: facts, figures, and fallacies. *Thorax* 1997; 52:820.
8. Kohansal R, Martinez-Camblor P, Agustí A, *et al.* The natural history of chronic airflow obstruction revisited: an analysis of the Framingham offspring cohort. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2009; 180:3.
9. Haynes JM, Stumbo RW. The Impact of Using Non-Birth Sex on the Interpretation of Spirometry Data in Subjects With Air-Flow Obstruction. *Respir Care* 2018; 63:215.
10. Babb TG, Wyrick BL, DeLorey DS, *et al.* Fat distribution and end-expiratory lung volume in lean and obese men and women. *Chest* 2008; 134:704.
11. Jones RL, Nzekwu MM. The effects of body mass index on lung volumes. *Chest* 2006; 130:827.
12. Scanlon PD, Shriver MD. "Race correction" in pulmonary-function testing. *N Engl J Med* 2010; 363:385.
13. Gaultier C, Crapo R. Effects of nutrition, growth hormone disturbances, training, altitude and sleep on lung volumes. *Eur Respir J* 1997; 10:2913.
14. Kumar R, Seibold MA, Aldrich MC, *et al.* Genetic ancestry in lung-function predictions. *N Engl J Med* 2010; 363:321.
15. Culver BH, Graham BL, Coates AL, *et al.* Recommendations for a Standardized Pulmonary Function Report. An Official American Thoracic Society Technical Statement. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2017; 196:1463.
16. Linares-Perdomo O, Hegewald M, Collingridge DS, *et al.* Comparison of NHANES III and ERS/GLI 12 for airway obstruction classification and severity. *Eur Respir J* 2016; 48:133.
17. Enright PL, Kronmal RA, Manolio TA, *et al.* Respiratory muscle strength in the elderly. Correlates and reference values. Cardiovascular Health Study Research Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994; 149:430.
18. ATS Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories. ATS statement: guidelines for the six-minute walk test. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002; 166:111.
19. Cerveri I, Corsico AG, Accordini S, *et al.* Underestimation of airflow obstruction among young adults using FEV1/FVC <70% as a fixed cut-off: a longitudinal evaluation of clinical and functional outcomes. *Thorax* 2008; 63:1040.
20. Smith LJ. The lower limit of normal versus a fixed ratio to assess airflow limitation: will the debate ever end? *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51.
21. Mannino DM. Should we be using statistics to define disease? *Thorax* 2008; 63:1031.
22. Xiong H, Huang Q, Shuai T, *et al.* Assessment of comorbidities and prognosis in patients with COPD diagnosed with the fixed ratio and the lower limit of normal: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Respir Res* 2020; 21:189.
23. Rice MB, Rifas-Shiman SL, Litonjua AA, *et al.* Lifetime Exposure to Ambient Pollution and Lung Function in Children. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2016; 193:881.
24. Gauderman WJ, Avol E, Gilliland F, *et al.* The effect of air pollution on lung development from 10 to 18 years of age. *N Engl J Med* 2004; 351:1057.
25. Jordan BK, McEvoy CT. Trajectories of Lung Function in Infants and Children: Setting a Course for Lifelong Lung Health. *Pediatrics* 2020; 146.
26. Enright P, Quanjer P. Don't diagnose mild COPD without confirming airway obstruction after an inhaled bronchodilator. *COPD* 2007; 4:89.
27. Han MK, Kim MG, Mardon R, *et al.* Spirometry utilization for COPD: how do we measure up? *Chest* 2007; 132:403.
28. US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF), Siu AL, Bibbins-Domingo K, *et al.* Screening for Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease: US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. *JAMA* 2016; 315:1372.
29. Enright PL, Studnicka M, Zielinski J. Spirometry to detect and manage COPD and asthma in the primary care setting. *Eur Respir Mon* 2005; 31:1.
30. Walters JA, Hansen EC, Johns DP, *et al.* A mixed methods study to compare models of spirometry delivery in primary care for patients at risk of COPD. *Thorax* 2008; 63:408.
31. Lusuardi M, De Benedetto F, Paggiaro P, *et al.* A randomized controlled trial on office spirometry in asthma and COPD in standard general practice: data from spirometry in Asthma and COPD: a comparative evaluation Italian study. *Chest* 2006; 129:844.
32. Levy ML, Quanjer PH, Booker R, *et al.* Diagnostic spirometry in primary care: Proposed standards for general practice compliant with American Thoracic Society and European Respiratory Society recommendations: a General Practice Airways Group (GPIAG)1 document, in association with the Association for Respiratory Technology & Physiology (ARTP)2 and Education for Health3 1 www.gpiag.org 2 www.artp.org 3 www.educationforhealth.org.uk. *Prim Care Respir J* 2009; 18:130.
33. Graham BL, Steenbruggen I, Miller MR, *et al.* Standardization of Spirometry 2019 Update. An Official American Thoracic Society and European Respiratory Society Technical Statement. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2019; 200:e70.
34. American Thoracic Society. Pulmonary Function Laboratories: Advice Regarding COVID-19. <https://www.thoracic.org/professionals/clinical-resources/disease-related-resources/pulmonary-function-laboratories.php> (Accessed on March 31, 2020).
35. Wilson KC, Kaminsky DA, Michaud G, *et al.* Restoring Pulmonary and Sleep Services as the COVID-19 Pandemic Lessens. From an Association of Pulmonary, Critical Care, and Sleep Division Directors and American Thoracic Society-coordinated Task Force. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2020; 17:1343.
36. Ferguson GT, Enright PL, Buist AS, Higgins MW. Office spirometry for lung health assessment in adults: A consensus statement from the National Lung Health Education Program. *Chest* 2000; 117:1146.
37. Culver BH, Graham BL, Coates AL, *et al.* Recommendations for a Standardized Pulmonary Function Report. An Official American Thoracic Society Technical Statement. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2017; 196:1463.
38. Ruppel GL, Carlin BW, Hart M, Doherty DE. Office Spirometry in Primary Care for the Diagnosis and Management of COPD: National Lung Health Education Program Update. *Respir Care* 2018; 63:242.

39. Townsend MC, Hankinson JL, Lindesmith LA, et al. Is my lung function really that good? Flow-type spirometer problems that elevate test results. *Chest* 2004; 125:1902.
40. Liistro G, Vanwelde C, Vincken W, et al. Technical and functional assessment of 10 office spirometers: A multicenter comparative study. *Chest* 2006; 130:657.
41. Schermer TR, Verweij EH, Cretier R, et al. Accuracy and precision of desktop spirometers in general practices. *Respiration* 2012; 83:344.
42. Miller MR, Hankinson J, Brusasco V, et al. Standardisation of spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26:319.
43. Enright PL. Office spirometry. *In: Atlas of office procedures*, 1999. Vol 2, p.299.
44. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, et al. Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26:948.
45. Vandevoorde J, Verbanck S, Schuermans D, et al. Forced vital capacity and forced expiratory volume in six seconds as predictors of reduced total lung capacity. *Eur Respir J* 2008; 31:391.
46. Swanney MP, Jensen RL, Crichton DA, et al. FEV(6) is an acceptable surrogate for FVC in the spirometric diagnosis of airway obstruction and restriction. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000; 162:917.
47. Miller MR, Quanjer PH, Swanney MP, et al. Interpreting lung function data using 80% predicted and fixed thresholds misclassifies more than 20% of patients. *Chest* 2011; 139:52.
48. Stanojevic S, Wade A, Stocks J, et al. Reference ranges for spirometry across all ages: a new approach. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2008; 177:253.
49. Quanjer PH, Stanojevic S, Cole TJ, et al. Multi-ethnic reference values for spirometry for the 3-95-yr age range: the global lung function 2012 equations. *Eur Respir J* 2012; 40:1324.
50. Hankinson JL, Odencrantz JR, Fedan KB. Spirometric reference values from a sample of the general U.S. population. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999; 159:179.
51. O'Donnell DE. Breathlessness in patients with chronic airflow limitation. Mechanisms and management. *Chest* 1994; 106:904.
52. Hnizdo E, Glindmeyer HW, Petsonk EL, et al. Case definitions for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *COPD* 2006; 3:95.
53. Swanney MP, Ruppel G, Enright PL, et al. Using the lower limit of normal for the FEV1/FVC ratio reduces the misclassification of airway obstruction. *Thorax* 2008; 63:1046.
54. García-Río F, Soriano JB, Miravittles M, et al. Overdiagnosing subjects with COPD using the 0.7 fixed ratio: correlation with a poor health-related quality of life. *Chest* 2011; 139:1072.
55. Çolak Y, Afzal S, Nordestgaard BG, et al. Young and middle-aged adults with airflow limitation according to lower limit of normal but not fixed ratio have high morbidity and poor survival: a population-based prospective cohort study. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51.
56. Jing JY, Huang TC, Cui W, et al. Should FEV1/FEV6 replace FEV1/FVC ratio to detect airway obstruction? A meta-analysis. *Chest* 2009; 135:991.
57. Jensen RL, Crapo RO, Enright P. A statistical rationale for the use of forced expired volume in 6 s. *Chest* 2006; 130:1650.
58. Bellia V, Sorino C, Catalano F, et al. Validation of FEV6 in the elderly: correlates of performance and repeatability. *Thorax* 2008; 63:60.
59. Vollmer WM, Gíslason T, Burney P, et al. Comparison of spirometry criteria for the diagnosis of COPD: results from the BOLD study. *Eur Respir J* 2009; 34:588.
60. Poels PJ, Schermer TR, Akkermans RP, et al. General practitioners' needs for ongoing support for the interpretation of spirometry tests. *Eur J Gen Pract* 2007; 13:16.
61. Schermer TR, Smeele IJ, Thoonen BP, et al. Current clinical guideline definitions of airflow obstruction and COPD overdiagnosis in primary care. *Eur Respir J* 2008; 32:945.
62. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert panel report III: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma. Bethesda, MD: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2007. (NIH publication no. 08-4051). Full text available online: www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthdln.htm (Accessed on August 12, 2009).
63. Qaseem A, Snow V, Shekelle P, et al. Diagnosis and management of stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med* 2007; 147:633.
64. Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD). Global Strategy for the Diagnosis, Management and Prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: 2020 Report. <http://www.goldcopd.org> (Accessed on December 16, 2020). A review of how reference equations are derived and used: Stanojevic S, Wade A, Stocks J. Reference values for lung function: past, present and future. *Eur Respir J* 2010; 36:12-19.
65. A detailed description of how the GLI-2012 were derived: Quanjer PH, Stanojevic S, Cole TJ, et al. Multi-ethnic reference values for spirometry for the 3-95-yr age range: the global lung function 2012 equations. *Eur Respir J* 2012; 40: 1324-43.
66. A comparison of several commonly used reference equations, and how interpretation changes when the GLI-2012 are applied: Quanjer PH, Brazzale DJ, Boros PW, et al. Implications of adopting the Global Lungs Initiative 2012 all-age reference equations for spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2013; 42: 1046-54.
67. Evidence supporting the misuse of fix cut-offs to interpret spirometry results: Miller MR, Quanjer PH, Swanney MP, et al. Interpreting lung function data using 80% predicted and fixed thresholds misclassifies more than 20% of patients. *Chest* 2011; 139: 52-9.
68. A summary of the clinical benefits of adopting the GLI-2012: Swanney MP, Miller MR. Adopting universal lung function reference equations. *Eur Respir J* 2013; 42: 901-3.
69. Sarangdhar N. Assessment of pulmonary function in children. *In: Pulmonary function tests and interpretation in health and diseases* (2017), Ed. P.S. Shankar, CBS publishers and distributors Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi, pp. 90-97.

Spirometry in Upper Airway Obstruction



Unnati Desai¹

(1) Associate Professor
Department of Pulmonary Medicine, Topiwala National Medical College
and B.Y.L. Nair Ch. Hospital, Mumbai
E-mail : unnati_desai82@yahoo.co.in

Ketaki Utpat²



(2) Assistant Professor

Introduction :

Upper airway (UA) is anatomically the section of the airways that begins from the nose and extends till the carina¹. Upper airway obstruction (UAO) is a distinct condition that can arise from a group of heterogeneous causes. Clinically it can present with acute or chronic symptoms depending on the etiology and the dynamics of the luminal obstruction. Acute UAO is a medical emergency and the patient may present with stridor, gasping and cyanosis and hypoxia. It is a clinical diagnosis and warrants immediate airway management. A subacute or chronic presentation is usually in form of progressive exertional dyspnea, hoarseness of voice, stridor and cough. These conditions may be frequently misdiagnosed as other common differentials like chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) or bronchial asthma (BA). In patients with acute UAO, a correct diagnosis is critical, as the definitive therapy often requires surgery. Once diagnosed and treated appropriately the results are gratifying with complete resolution of symptoms. UAO can further be classified as variable if the severity of obstruction varies according to phase of respiration or fixed where the severity of obstruction is unaltered irrespective of the phase of respiration². UAO can arise from either intra or extra- thoracic causes. The common intra and extra thoracic causes of UAO are enlisted in Table 1. The mechanisms and pathodynamics of UAO in both these categories are distinctly different. Definitive diagnosis of UAO requires the inspection of UA by maneuvers laryngoscopy or bronchoscopy.

Causes of Extrathoracic UAO	Causes of Intrathoracic UAO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Goitre ➤ Vocal cord dysfunction syndrome ➤ Hypertrophied tonsils ➤ Laryngostenosis* ➤ Postextubation granuloma ➤ Retropharyngeal abscess ➤ Neoplasms ➤ Relapsing polychondritis ➤ Bilateral vocal cord paralysis ➤ Cricoarytenoid arthritis <p style="margin-top: 10px;">* Causes of fixed upper airway obstruction</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Tracheal stenosis due to intubation* ➤ Foreign body aspiration ➤ Benign tracheal/bronchial tumors ➤ Malignancies ➤ Intrathoracic goitre ➤ Tracheobronchomegaly ➤ Acquired tracheomalacia ➤ Right-sided aortic arch

Table 1 : Extrathoracic and Intrathoracic causes of Upper airway Obstruction (UAO)

Another simple test which gives us a lucid idea about the presence of UAO is spirometry with its flow-volume loop (FVL). Spirometry is the most commonly employed pulmonary function test (PFT) which basically measures the volume and speed of air exhaled and inhaled. This gives an insight into the type and the intensity of the underlying airway disease. It is a non-invasive, relatively inexpensive test requiring a standard spirometer and can be performed on an outpatient basis. By these virtues it becomes an ideal screening test in cases of suspected UAO. Recording a FVL is a vital and integral component of spirometry. The countenances of the FVL not only help us in determining the presence of UAO but also help us in gauging the site (intrathoracic or extrathoracic) and the nature (fixed or variable) of the obstruction³.

Dynamics of Abnormal Flow Volume Loop in Upper Airway Obstruction :

The underlying mechanisms of obstruction, the pressure variations and the resultant morphology of FVL generated depend on the site of UAO. In variable extrathoracic UAO (VE-UAO), the pressure in the trachea (P_{tr}) dips on forced inspiration resulting in a greater transmural pressure at the site of the lesion. This leads to worsening of the obstruction causing flattening of the inspiratory portion of the FVL^{2,3}. On expiration the intratracheal pressure increases. This reverses the transmural pressure tending to lessen the degree of obstruction and improve flow (Figure 1). In variable intrathoracic UAO (VI-UAO), with expiration the pleural pressure (P_{pl}) exceeds the rise in intratracheal pressure. This results in a reduction in the size of the airway at the site of the lesion causing an expiratory curve flattening^{2,3}. During forced inspiration the pleural pressure becomes markedly negative. This decreases the obstruction by reversing the transmural pressure resulting in improved flow (Figure 2). In a fixed obstruction, irrespective of the site (intrathoracic or extrathoracic) flow is restricted equally in inspiration and expiration.(Figure 3) This flattens both the inspiratory and expiratory curves to form a "boxed" loop. The morphology of FVLs in all these conditions is shown in Figure 4. To avoid any lacunae in diagnosis, reliance on any single ratio or measurement is should be avoided. Hence not only the visual appearance of the FVL but the upper airway indices should be taken into consideration⁴. The symptoms in UAO appear when the obstruction is relatively severe. However a FVL may show aberrations much before these symptoms manifest. Hence if a high index of suspicion is maintained, FVLs help in the early detection of UAO before symptoms manifest.

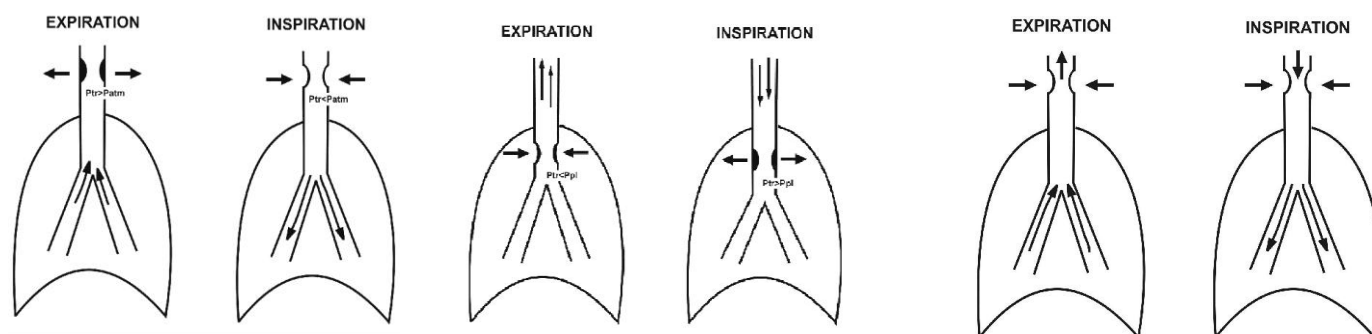


Figure 1

Figure 2

Figure 3

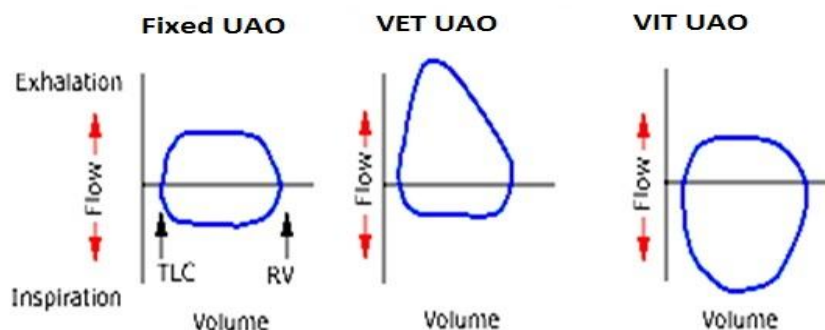


Figure 4

Figure 1 : Schematic diagram to explain mechanism for Variable extra thoracic upper airway obstruction (VET UAO)

Figure 2 : Schematic diagram to explain mechanism for Variable intra thoracic upper airway obstruction (VIT UAO)

Figure 3 : Schematic diagram to explain mechanism for Fixed upper airway obstruction

Figure 4 : Flow volume loops depicting VET UAO, VIT UAO and Fixed upper airway obstruction

Recording a Flow volume Loop :

Flow-volume Loops (FVL) were first elucidated by Miller and Hyatt⁵. In this maneuver, the subject inhales to his total lung capacity (TLC) and then exhales forcefully to residual volume (RV) followed by rapid inhalation to TLC again. A sensitive pressure transducer produces an electric signal, which is computed by a microprocessor, displayed on the screen and recorded. The flow is plotted on the Y-axis and the volume on the X-axis to construct a FVL. A normal FVL shows diminished flow as the lung volume shrinks, seen as slight coving near the RV on the expiratory curve. This occurs due to compressive forces during exhalation and distension by negative pressures during inhalation. The criteria recommended by the American Thoracic Society are used to select the best test of a minimum of three respiratory manoeuvres⁶.

Visual examination of Flow Volume Loop and criteria for Diagnosing Upper Airway Obstruction :

For UAO, visual inspection of the FVL with respect to flattening of the inspiratory/expiratory portions or both gives a clue to presence, site and nature of UAO. In addition two ratios are calculated

- 1) Empey's index⁷ which is ratio of forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁) and peak expiratory flow (PEF)
- 2) Mid vital capacity ratio, i.e. the ratio of maximal expiratory flow at 50% of vital capacity (FEF₅₀) and maximal inspiratory flow at 50% of the vital capacity (FIF₅₀).

An Empey's index greater than 8 suggests presence of UAO. Further FEF₅₀/FIF₅₀ greater than 1 indicates variable extrathoracic VE- UAO, whereas FEF₅₀/FIF₅₀ less than 0.3 indicates variable intrathoracic VI-UAO⁸.

Special FVL caveats :

Small variations done in the techniques of performing a FVL yield excellent results and help the clinician in clinching the diagnosis. FVLs change their morphology depending on the patient positioning as it affects the dynamics of the UAO. FVLs should be plotted in those positions in which symptoms are maximal to detect postural UAO. In some cases of goiter when sitting FVL is normal, supine FVL helps in detecting UAO. This also helps in determining the subsets of the patients who will benefit the most from surgery. FVLs are particularly important in obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA), as it is a simple and inexpensive objective method to predict the presence and the severity of UAO. The saw-tooth sign on FVL in OSA was first described by Sanders et al. in patients with OSA. It is hallmarked by presence of three or more consecutive peaks and troughs occurring at regular intervals⁹ (Figure 5). The underlying mechanism has been attributed to turbulent flow due to sporadic narrowing of the upper airway due to the tissue redundancy . In addition to OSA this could also be seen in intrathoracic central airway stenosis, tracheomalacia and laryngeal dyskinesia⁹.

Patients with OSA needs to triaged as per the clinical severity and the pretest probability scores so that those that need a polysomnography (PSG) on priority get an opportunity to be tested at the earliest. This clinical determination of the pretest probability is further supported by an evidence of an UAO on a FVL. Posture related worsening of UAO also occurs in patients with OSA, as nasopharyngeal resistance increases in the supine position¹⁰. Hence in OSA when conventional oral and sitting FVLs are normal, supine position and nasal FVLs are indicated. Distinct patterns of the FVL like the biphasic spirogram (also called the "two-can" effect) give a clue to the possibility of main stem bronchial narrowing as seen in malignancy with an endobrochial mass causing complete obstruction of a mainstem bronchus. This can be confirmed subsequently by other techniques like fibre-optic bronchoscopy (FOB). In unilateral mainstem bronchial narrowing the emptying and filling of the lungs occurs as two distinct compartments the normal lung fast and the one with the narrowed bronchus much slower resulting in this biphasic pattern of the FVL¹¹. Spirometry in patients with tracheal stomas or tracheostomy tubes is difficult due to failure to achieve a good seal between the tube and the mouthpiece of the spirometer. This can be overcome using adapters¹². Thus FVL is an inexpensive screening test and can be performed in specific positions and via alternative routes to evaluate UAO.

Saw tooth Shape of Flow Volume Loop

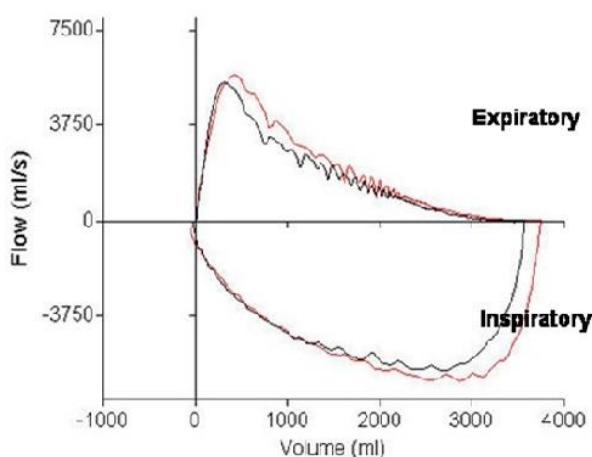


Figure 5 : Flow-volume loop depicting "Saw-tooth" appearance

Case Report :

A 60 year old male, non-smoker, was referred to us for assessment of breathlessness. He complained of progressive exertional dyspnea since 2 to 3 years which worsened in the recumbent position. Now, he also complained of difficulty in his day-to-day activities since 2 months. He also gave a history of wasting of hand muscles since 6 months. Patient was hypertensive since 7 years. On neurological examination, the patient had a stooped posture with masseter muscle wasting, thenar and hypothenar muscle wasting, mini opsomyoclonus of both hands and brisk reflexes. The respiratory system examination was within normal limits. The baseline saturation of the patient measured with a pulse oximeter (SpO₂) was normal; however, there was a desaturation to 80% with paradoxical thoraco-abdominal movements on lying supine. Chest radiograph was suggestive of bilateral elevated diaphragm. High-resolution

computed tomography of chest was normal. With a suspicion of a neurological disease, the patient was evaluated with an electromyography and nerve conduction velocity study which showed acute and chronic denervation of C5 to C8 and T1 nerves, with site of lesion being anterior horn cells/nerve roots. Spirometry was suggestive of forced expiratory volume in the first second (FEV₁) of 1.25 L (44%), forced vital capacity (FVC) of 1.85 L (53%) with FEV₁/FVC ratio of 68% in sitting position. While in supine position, they were reduced to FEV₁ of 0.42 L (15%) and FVC of 0.89 L (25%). The flow volume loops (FVL) revealed upper airway UAO.

The Empey's index was 8. The FV loop characteristically demonstrated a biphasic expiratory loop ("two-can" effect) along with fall in lung function in the supine position (Figure. 6). To rule out Sleep Disordered Breathing (SDB), a polysomnography (PSG) was done which showed apnoea-hypopnoea index (AHI) of 29 with predominant Central Sleep Apnoea (CSA). Titration with bi-level positive airway pressure (PAP) showed reduction in CSA AHI. The patient was diagnosed as a case of SDB, CSA with UAO due to motor neuron disease (MND). Spirometry with FVL plays an important role in conditions like neuromuscular diseases particularly motor neuron disease. It is not only an important tool in assessing respiratory functions but it also can demonstrate peculiar characteristics of in the FV loop which may help in clinching the diagnosis. The "two-can" effect is defined as the biphasic nature of expiratory FVL. This phenomenon occurs due to sudden laryngeal muscle contractions in MND. Patients with MNDs also have associated sleep related breathing disorders like OSA or CSA. This leads to flaccidity of the UAs and leads to peculiar FVL changes. Our patient also demonstrated the characteristic "two-can" effect on his FVL which occurred due to his MND with CSA as diagnosed on his holistic workup.

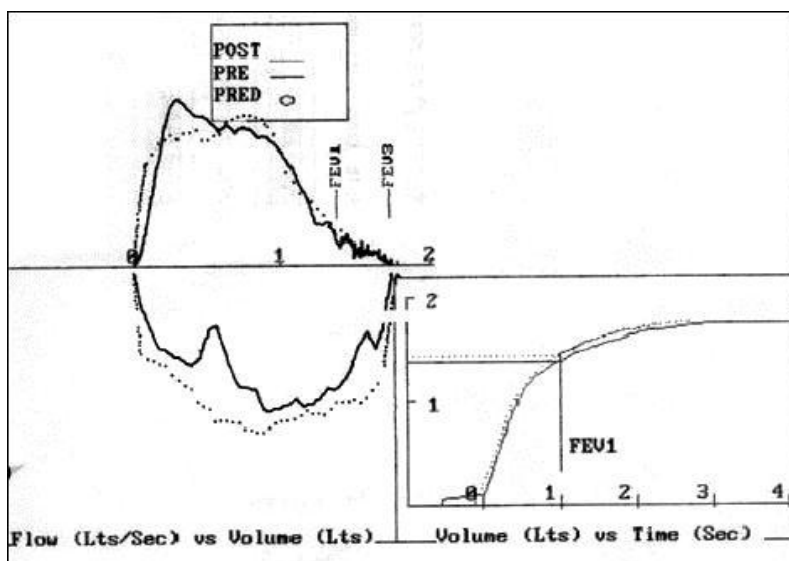


Figure 6 : Schematic diagram to explain mechanism for Biphasic loop (Two-can effect) in case of central sleep apnoea.

Conclusion :

UAO continues to be an under diagnosed and underreported entity. Spirometry with FVL is an excellent screening tool for UAO by virtue of its simplicity, ease of availability and non-invasiveness. A timely index of suspicion and a low threshold for performance of a spirometry with FVL in the appropriate clinical context can aid in the early diagnosis of UAO and hence shift the patient prognosis favorably.

References :

1. Modrykamien AM, Gudavalli R, McCarthy K, Liu X, Stoller JK. Detection of upper airway obstruction with spirometry results and the flow-volume loop: a comparison of quantitative and visual inspection criteria. *Respir Care*. 2009 Apr;54(4):474-9.
2. Kapnadak SG, Kreit JW. Stay in the loop! *Ann Am Thorac Soc*. 2013 Apr;10(2-):16671.
3. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, Crapo RO, Burgos F, Casaburi R, et al. Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J*. 2005 Nov;26(5):948-68.
4. Karkhanis VS, Desai U, Joshi JM. Flow volume loop as a diagnostic marker. *Lung India* 2013; 30:166-68.
5. Miller RD, Hyatt RE. Evaluation of obstructive lesions of the trachea and larynx by flow volume loops. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1973; 108:475.
6. Miller MR, Hankinson J, Brusasco V, Burgos F, Casaburi R, Coates A, et al; ATS/ERS Task Force. Standardisation of spirometry. *Eur Respir J*. 2005 Aug;26(2):319-38.
7. Empey DW. Assessment of upper airways obstruction. *British Medical Journal*. 1972; 3:503-5.
8. Kryger M, Bode F, Antic B, Anthonisen N. Diagnosis of obstruction of the upper and central airways. *Am J Med*. 1976; 61:85-92.
9. Nakajima A, Saraya T, Takata S, Ishii H, Nakazato Y, Takei H, Takizawa H, Goto H. The saw-tooth sign as a clinical clue for intrathoracic central airway obstruction. *BMC Res Notes* 2012;5:388.
10. Anch AM, Remmers JE, Bunce H. Supraglottic airway resistance in normal subjects and patients with occlusive sleep apnoea. *J Appl Physiol*. 1982; 53:1158-63.
11. Agrawal A, Sahni S, Marder G, Shah R, Talwar A. Biphasic flow-volume loop in granulomatosis with polyangiitis related unilateral bronchus obstruction. *Respir Investig*. 2016 Jul;54(4):280-3.
12. Mirza s, Hopkinson L, Malik TH, Willatt DJ. The use of inhalers in patients with tracheal stomas or tracheostomy tubes. *The Journal of Laryngology and Otology*. 1999; 113:762-4.

Pitfalls of Spirometry



Surinder K. Jindal

Emeritus-Professor, Postgraduate Institute of Medical Education and Research (PGIMER), Chandigarh, India
Medical Director, Jindal Clinics, Chandigarh, India
E- mail : dr.skjindal@gmail.com

Introduction :

Spirometry is the basic lung function test which is most commonly done in pulmonary practice. Although spirometry is not a test to arrive at a clinical diagnosis, it is helpful for the clinician in several different ways as follows:

1. To categorize the disease into obstructive, restrictive or mixed pattern
2. Determination of *best* lung function of the patient and disease severity
3. Subclinical disease detection in a risk-category
4. Evaluation of treatment follow-up
5. Prediction of outcomes
6. Intensive monitoring of treatment and disease progression

Spirometry is also an important tool for screening in epidemiological research.

Other pulmonary function tests (PFT) needed for differential diagnosis are done as and when necessary depending upon a particular clinical condition. They include dynamic Studies such as Flow-Volume Loops and static lung volumes such as the FRC measurements. Measurement of gas transfer is done with the assessment of Diffusing Capacity and partial pressures of arterial blood gases.

Spirometry provides important information on the following different lung parameters important to interpret for both diagnosis and treatment purposes:

1. Lung volumes and capacities such as tidal volume (TV), vital capacity (VC) and their derivatives
2. Dynamic lung functions- expiratory flows such as FEV_1 , $FEF_{200-1200}$ and $FEF_{25-75\%}$
3. Flow – Volume loops

Bronchodilator reversibility (BDR) test consists of spirometry performed before and after bronchodilator inhalation following a specifically designed protocol. BDR is done in cases of obstructive pattern particularly to differentiate between asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

Pitfalls of Spirometry :

Spirometry is fraught with many pitfalls and inaccuracies. Errors may arise during the testing procedure as well as with reference to the acceptability of the graph and interpretation of the test. Some of these important pitfalls are discussed as under.

1. **Related to the testing procedure :** Spirometry requires active involvement of the patient and the technician throughout the procedure. A standardized procedure is therefore essential for meaningful interpretation.

The standardized test requires that the patient should be comfortable while sitting or standing. Nose clips and tight sealing of lips over mouthpiece are recommended to prevent any air-leak during the procedure. The test begins with normal tidal volume breaths. After a few breaths when the TV stabilizes, perform a maximal inspiration at end-expiration to total lung capacity followed by exhalation as hard, as fast, and as completely as possible.

2. Related to the Test Quality : A good quality test should reflect the procedure with essential acceptable criteria such as the following :

- i. Stable tidal volume without any leak
- ii. Complete inhalation during to the tidal volume before exhalation
- iii. Satisfactory and uninterrupted exhalation
- iv. Satisfactory duration of the procedure
- v. Without the presence of artifacts
- vi. The reproducibility criteria should also be satisfied. It is normally desirable that 3-8 manoeuvres should be done for this purpose. It is normally aimed to obtain two largest values within 0.2 litres for both vital capacity and forced expiratory volume in 1st second (FEV₁) . Interpret 3 best tests if the earlier stated criteria are not met even after 8 trials.

3. Related to the graph : The graph obtained with spirometry depicts volumes and flows at ambient temperature and pressure (ATP). For the purpose of standardization, these are converted to body temperature, pressure, water vapor saturated (BTPS) conditions.

4. Interpretation : For interpretation of spirometry, one needs to know the normal values. Unlike many other physiological parameters, there are no fixed spirometric values. They vary depending upon gender, age, height and body-mass index (BMI). For proper interpretation, one needs to know the values predicted for an individual. The test-determined value is thereafter changed as percent of the predicted values. Predicted values are obtained from different regression equations or nomograms relevant for the population being tested. Sometimes, the age-specific means are used for prediction if the regression equations are not available. The other options to express abnormality, the values are expressed as either 'lower limits of normal (LLN), fixed percent, lower fifth percentile or lower 95th confidence interval (C.I).

- It is futile and often confusing to use more spirographic variables than the necessary since computerized analysis of the graph may provide a large number of values. One generally needs only VC, FEV₁ and FEV₁/VC% from a good quality satisfactory graph. Mid-flow rates may sometimes help.
- Interpret values well above or well below lower limits of normal with confidence. Borderline values should be interpreted with great caution. Such values should be interpreted along with the clinical information. Other reports which may result in fallacious interpretations include false positive & false negative results. Mixed defects also need a careful interpretation in the light of clinical details. One may erroneously categorize a defect as restrictive or obstructive.

Common errors during testing :

1. Unsatisfactory start – a slow start or hesitation when starting exhalation : Spirometry is a patient-dependent test involving cooperation and effort on his part. Even a slight hesitation or a delayed start produces erroneous results. Both hesitation in exhalation and slow manoeuvre will cause a delay in the peak flow and falsely increase the FEV₁.
2. Coughing during the test
3. Hesitation or swallowing during exhalation
4. Obstruction due to patient's tongue or leak at the mouthpiece

A good spirogram should comprise of a full inspiration, rapid achievement of highest flow followed by smooth and continuous decrease in expiratory flow gradually terminating to the resting value. Expiration should ideally last for three seconds or more.

In spite of a good graph, spirometry interpretation also requires other essential criteria as below:

1. Demographic information such as the gender, age, height, weight and ethnicity. Normal values used for prediction depend upon an individual's age, height and gender. Incorrectly entered values may not be even noticeable to the person reporting the graph.
2. Instrument calibration : This should be ensured on regular basis to avoid errors.
3. Selection of the graph as per standard recommendations without the presence of artefacts due to a hesitant start, slow expiration, glottis closure, breath holding or overlap of breaths. Poor selection frequently leads to false-negative or false-positive results.

Reference equations :

It is generally recommended including the ATS/ERS guidelines that each pulmonary function laboratory should have its own reference equations based on the local population. This may not be possible in all scenarios when such nomograms are not available. It is important to mention that reference equations themselves are meaningful only when they have been derived from an adequate sample size which included different ethnicities, ages and heights using standard statistical analyses.

In summary, spirometry is a test which is highly dependent upon cooperation and effort of the patient as well as the expertise and endurance of the technician. It is fraught with several pitfalls responsible for relatively high rates of false positive and false negative results. It looks like a simple test but with potential to provide several erroneous results. Interpretation of spirometry requires expertise and background clinical information. Computerized interpretation of disease state based on spirometric values must always be avoided.

Points of interest :

1. Although not a diagnostic test, spirometry is highly useful for disease- categorization and severity, determination of *best* lung function, evaluation of treatment follow-up and prediction of outcomes
2. It requires cooperation and efforts on the part of both the patient and the technician.
3. It is important to select a good spirometric graph for a meaningful interpretation
4. Patient demographic information is crucial for spirometry interpretation.
5. Spirometry interpretation should always be done in the light of clinical available data rather than a computerized categorization as an obstructive, restrictive or mixed disease.

References :

1. Brusasco V, Crapo R, Viegi G. ATS/ERS task force: Standardisation of lung function testing. Standardisation of spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26: 319-338.
2. Jindal SK. Spirometry: Pitfalls and interpretation. *Ind J Chest Dis Allied Sci* 2001; 43:193-95.
3. Aggarwal AN, Gupta D, Behera D, Jindal SK. Applicability of commonly used Caucasian prediction equations for spirometry interpretation in India. *Indian J Med Res* 2005; 122:153-64.
4. Jindal SK, Wahi PL. Pulmonary function laboratory in the tropics : needs, problems and solutions. *In* : Lung Diseases in the Tropics (1990), Ed. O.P. Sharma, Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, pp.523-542.

Spirometry : Interesting Cases



Rohit Kumar

Associate Professor, Department of Pulmonary Medicine,
Vardhman Mahavir Medical College and Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi
E-mail : dr.rohitkumar@mail.com

CASE 1.

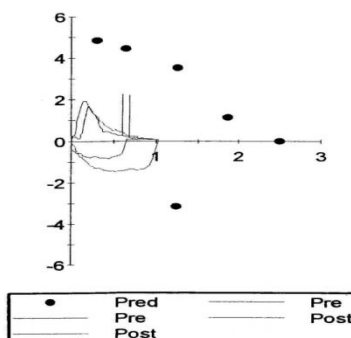
A 35 year old woman presents with history of dyspnoea on exertion and orthopnea since 2-3 years. She is a never smoker and there is no history of asthma or any other chronic pulmonary or cardiac diseases. She underwent a surgery for mitral valve repair a year back. Her spirometry is as follows :

	Pre - bronchodilator			Post - bronchodilator	Change
	Actual	Predicted	% Predicted		
FVC (l)	1.13	2.65	42.6%	1.18	+ 4.4%
FEV₁ (l)	0.75	2.15	34.8%	0.80	+ 6.7%
FEV₁ / FVC	66.3%	81.1%		67.7%	

* FVC: forced vital capacity; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second

Her spirometry was repeated in supine position and was as follows :

	Supine	% Change from upright position
FVC	0.85	- 24.7%
FEV₁	0.66	- 12%
FEV₁ / FVC	77.6%	



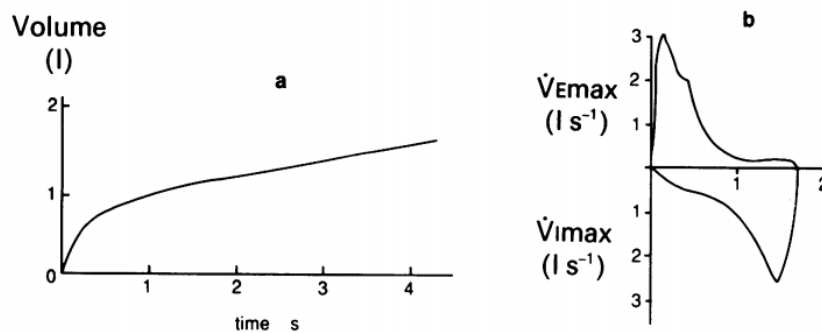
Flow-Volume Loop

Interpretation :

The patient has reduced FEV₁ and FVC with pre and post bronchodilator FEV₁/FVC ratio less than 70%. Bronchodilator reversibility is not significant (less than 200 ml and 12% change in FEV₁). There is a mixed pattern with either air trapping or true restrictive process which can be confirmed by measurement of static lung volumes. In view of her surgical history patient was also asked for a repeat test in supine position. There is more than 10% decrease in FVC which suggests respiratory muscle weakness (diaphragmatic paralysis could be explained due to phrenic nerve injury during the operation). Unilateral diaphragmatic paralysis is usually associated with a decrease in VC of 15 to 25 percent; bilateral diaphragmatic paralysis can be associated with a decrease in supine VC approaching 50 percent. A decrease of more than 10% in supine from sitting/upright position is considered significant for diagnosis of respiratory muscle weakness¹.

CASE 2.

A 63 year old man, current smoker, presented with history of left sided chest pain and exertional breathlessness since 5 months . On examination of the chest a monophonic wheeze was heard in the left upper areas of chest. Spirometry was done and below are the forced expiratory spirogram and flow volume loop of the patient



Volume-Time Curve & Flow-Volume Loop

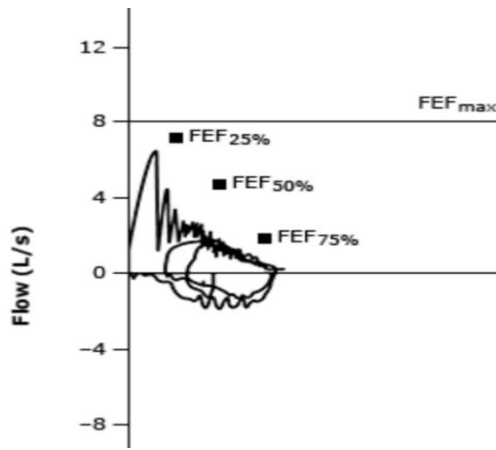
Interpretation :

The flow volume loop shows a “biphasic” pattern that is characteristically seen in mainstem obstruction (left side in the present case)² . In this pattern the initial half of curve is normal due to rapid emptying of unaffected side while the second half has a straight line appearance due to constant expiratory flow because of the fixed airway resistance on the diseased side. Similarly, during forced inspiration the curve shows a pronounced slowing of maximum inspiratory flow towards the end of inspiration. The inspiratory curve flattening is more specific than that of the expiratory part for recognising mainstem bronchial narrowing, as the end inspiratory tail (straightening) is not a feature of generalised airways obstruction. The volume time spirogram seen above illustrates the contribution of slowly emptying lung compartments due to obstruction.

CASE 3.

A 54 year old man, ex-smoker (history of smoking 30 pack years) , presented with chronic cough and exertional dyspnoea. He was diagnosed as a case of COPD and was given inhaled bronchodilators with only partial relief. There was history of wheezing and breathlessness which increased on lying down. Patient underwent spirometry that revealed the following result :

	Pre - bronchodilator			Post - bronchodilator	Change
	Actual	Predicted	% Predicted		
FVC (l)	2.72	3.56	76.4%	2.80	+3%
FEV₁	1.90	2.95	64.4%	2.02	+6.3%
FEV₁ / FVC	69.8%	82.8%		72.1%	



Flow-Volume Loop

Interpretation :

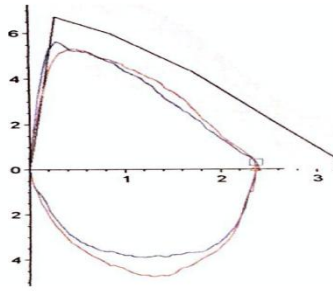
Both FVC and FEV₁ are reduced and reduced pre bronchodilator ratio reveals obstructive pattern with no significant bronchodilator reversibility. Although post bronchodilator ratio is more than 70% hence a diagnosis of COPD is not suggestive with these values. Also seen in flow volume loop are “oscillations” in the late expiratory part of the curve. There is sharp peak in expiratory curve with a rapid decline with tailing of end part suggestive of obstructive pattern. These oscillations can be caused by tracheobronchomalacia, redundant pharyngeal tissue, neuromuscular disease, or structural or functional disorders of the larynx^{3,4}. Bronchoscopy was done and it revealed dynamic airway collapse with more than 50% collapse during expiration suggestive of tracheobronchomalacia. The sharp peak with decline is also associated with collapse of airways due to negative transmural pressure in this condition.

CASE 4.

A 16 year old girl presented with complaints of breathlessness and cough with expectoration for 5 years which are usually seen with change of season and during episodes there is diurnal variation with more symptoms at night. Family history (mother) of allergic rhinitis is present. On examination (done during the episode) rhonchi are heard bilaterally. Chest X ray is normal. Her spirometry result is shown below.

	Pre - bronchodilator			Post - bronchodilator		Change
	Actual	Predicted	% Predicted		% Predicted	
FVC (l)	2.35	3.40	69.1%	2.40	70.5%	+2.1%
FEV₁ (l)	2.18	2.80	77.8%	2.21	78.9%	+1.3%
FEV₁ / FVC		82.4%		92.1%		
FET	6.2 sec			5.8 sec		

*FET : forced expiratory time



Flow-Volume Loop

Interpretation :

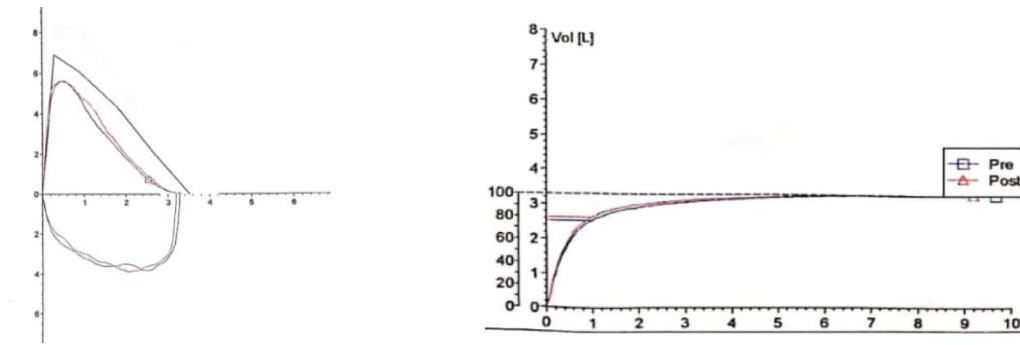
The spirometry values are suggestive of restrictive pattern. The flow volume curve is smaller but parallel to the predicted curve and a distinct “Knee” pattern (convex inflection) can be appreciated on the expiratory limb. The knee pattern is a normal variant usually seen below 35 years of age due to a proximal flow limiting choke point in the airways that moves distally with age due to loss of elastic recoil of parenchyma. The flow volume curve is more towards normal and comparable to the predicted curve though the values suggest restrictive disease.

Static lung volumes were done for the patient and TLC (total lung capacity) was normal (88% of predicted) and RV/TLC was slightly increased (124% predicted). This is “pseudo-restriction” and is known as ‘non-specific ventilatory abnormality’. This is usually seen in asthma (mild or quiescent asthma), obese individuals or children and young females⁵. In the current case asthma explains the above findings which can be confirmed by doing bronchoprovocation test.

CASE 5.

A 22 year old boy complained of intermittent wheezing, chest tightness and breathlessness. The symptoms were exaggerated few minutes after exercise and used to subside in an hour. There was no history of smoking or environmental exposures. Family history was insignificant. Chest X ray revealed no abnormality. Spirometry was done and values and curve are given below :

	Pre - bronchodilator			Post - bronchodilator		Change
	Actual	Predicted	% Predicted		% Predicted	
FVC (l)	3.25	3.60	90.2%	3.34	92.8%	+3%
FEV₁ (l)	2.55	3.10	82.3%	2.60	83.9%	+3%
FEV₁ / FVC	78.4%	86.1%		77.8%		
FEV₆	3.20			3.26		
FEV₁ / FEV₆	79.6%			79.7%		
FEF₂₅₋₇₅ (l/sec)	2.20	3.90	56.4%	2.45	62.8%	



Flow-Volume Loop and Volume-Time Curve

Interpretation :

FVC, FEV₁ and the ratio of both are all within normal limits for the patient. However, maximal mid expiratory flow (FEF₂₅₋₇₅) is drastically reduced. Though reduction of this parameter is non-specific for small airway diseases but they are among the earliest signs of airflow obstruction in such diseases and hence can help in narrowing to the diagnosis and directing further investigations. Another parameter seen in the above spirometry is FEV₆ (forced expiratory volume at 6 seconds). It has been seen in various studies that FEV₁ / FEV₆ < 73% and FEV₆ < 82% predicted can be used as a valid alternative for the FEV₁ / FVC < 70% and FVC < 80% predicted cut-off points for the detection of obstruction and restriction, respectively^{6,7}. It is considered as an effective screening tool in the primary care centres for early detection of obstructive airway diseases especially COPD among high risk individuals (smokers, > 40 years of age). It has the following advantages:

1. Easier to perform especially for older patients
2. More reproducible than FVC
3. Reduce risk of syncope as it involves shorter manoeuvre

In view of his history and MMEF values, differential diagnosis of airway disorder was kept and patient was further taken up for bronchial provocation test (post exercise), as below :

Post challenge	5 minutes	10 minutes	20 minutes	30 minutes
FEV ₁ (l)	2.45	2.44	2.31	2.24
Change (%)	-3.9%	-4%	-9.4%	12.1%

Interpretation :

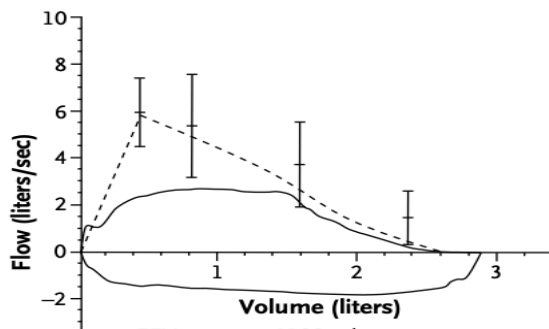
Exercise induced bronchial challenge is a physical challenge indirect test that has low sensitivity and high specificity. A negative challenge does not rule out asthma but a positive test is highly specific for exercise induced asthma. The test is considered positive when there is fall of > 10% in adults and > 13% in paediatrics from baseline FEV₁. The above result shows a positive response to exercise challenge and suggest exercise induced asthma in the patient.

CASE 6.

A 36 year old woman presented to emergency department complaining of difficulty to clear secretions and shortness of breath. 3 weeks prior to this event the patient was hospitalised for pneumonia and underwent percutaneous tracheostomy. On examination tracheostomy scar was noticed which was healed and she was tachypnoeic. On auscultation of chest prolonged inspiratory phase was appreciated with harsh breath sounds. A bedside spirometry was done which revealed the following values:

	Predicted	Baseline	% of Predicted
FVC	3.25	2.80	86.1%
FEV ₁	2.87	2.10	73.1%
FEV ₁ / FVC	88.3%	75%	
PEFR (l/s)		2.75	
PIFR (l/s)		2.98	

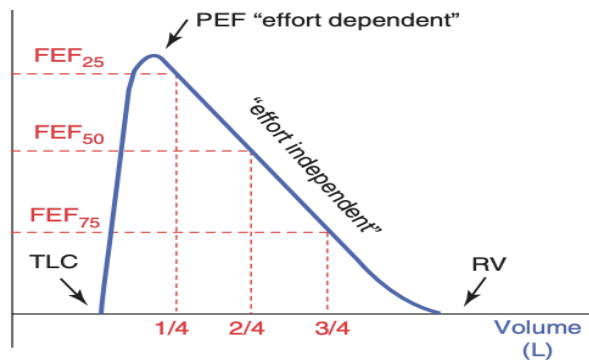
*PEFR: peak expiratory flow rates; PIFR: peak inspiratory flow rate



Flow-Volume Loop

Interpretation :

FEV₁ is slightly reduced and FVC is within normal range. Looking at the flow volume loop one can clearly appreciate the flattening of both inspiratory and expiratory part which is indicative of fixed upper/central airway obstruction. Also upper airway obstruction diagnosis is supported by calculating Empey index which is the ratio of FEV₁ (ml) / PEFR (l/min). In a healthy individual this ratio is less than 10 while in a person with upper airways obstruction ratio is usually greater than 10 and the higher the index the more severe the obstruction⁸. This is due to a much more reduction of PEFR than FEV₁ in upper airway obstruction. The initial part of expiratory limb (flow at higher lung volumes) of flow volume loop is effort dependent and hence the flow is reduced to a greater extent due to increased resistance because of upper airway obstruction whereas at lower lung volumes flow is effort independent and is primarily determined by collapse of bronchioles.



Effort-dependent and Effort-independent parts of Airflow, as depicted in the Flow-Volume Loop

Hence the ratio of PEFR and FEV₁ is above 10 in cases of upper airways obstruction. In the present case the ratio is 12.7 and hence is suggestive of upper airway obstruction and the graph points towards a fixed obstruction. Considering her history and spirometry, bronchoscopy was performed which revealed subglottic stenosis.

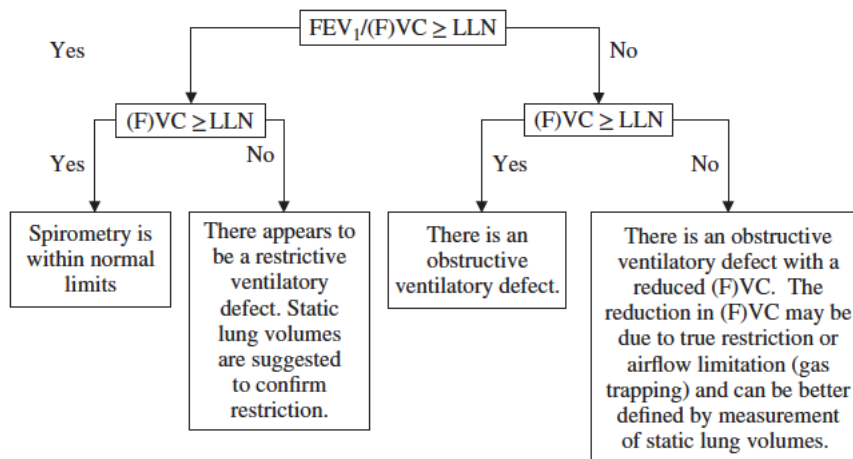
During inspiration the forced maneuver is effort dependent whereas the major part of expiration is effort independent (except the initial portion wherein peak flow is achieved). Due to this, the flow during the middle of inspiration measured at 50% of the FVC (FIF50%) is usually greater than the maximal expiratory flow at 50% of FVC (FEF50%). Ratio of FIF50% / FEF50% is, therefore, usually less than 1⁹. In

variable extrathoracic lesions, the ratio is increased (usually greater than 1), while in variable intrathoracic lesions, the ratio is diminished (0.2 or less). In fixed obstructions (intrathoracic or extrathoracic), the ratio is expected to be close to 1.

Key Points :

Interpretation of spirometry is done in following steps :

1. Demographics (age, sex , height, race) for reference values and quality of test (such as technical comments for acceptability, reproducibility and end of test criteria) are first analysed
2. Analysis of size and shape of flow volume loop¹⁰ :
 - a. Scalloped curve / concave expiratory limb : obstructive disorders
 - b. Small size with steep slope and low MMEF (maximal mid expiratory flow) with normal or reduced PEFR giving a “witch’s hat” appearance : parenchymal restrictive disorders
 - c. Low PEFR, low MMEF with parallel slope to predicted curve : chest wall restrictive disorders
 - d. Non sharp peak producing a convex curve : poor effort or neuro muscular disorders
 - e. Flattening of any limb :
 - i. Only expiratory limb is flat (variable intra-thoracic obstruction)
 - ii. Only inspiratory limb is flat (variable extra-thoracic obstruction)
 - iii. Both inspiratory and expiratory limbs are flat (fixed upper airway obstruction)
3. Analysis of spirometry values⁵ :



Simplified algorithm for analysis of Spirometry values

4. Grading of severity¹¹ : ATS grading of severity of any spirometric abnormality based on FEV₁.
 After determining the pattern to be obstructive, restrictive or mixed, FEV₁ is used to grade severity:
 - Mild: FEV₁ > 70 (% pred.)
 - Moderate : FEV₁ 60 – 69 (% pred.)
 - Moderately severe : FEV₁ 50 – 59 (% pred.)
 - Severe : FEV₁ 35 – 49 (% pred.)
 - Very severe : FEV₁ < 35 (% pred.)
5. Correlation of the data with clinical history and other investigations : As spirometry is not specific for any disease and is a supportive test it is always to be interpreted with correlation to patients history and other investigations

References :

1. Tests of respiratory muscle strength. In: *Interpreting Lung Function Tests* [Internet]. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2014 [cited 2020 Dec 27]. p. 79-98. Available from: <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/9781118405444.ch5>
2. Gascoigne AD, Corris PA, Dark JH, Gibson GJ. The biphasic spirogram: a clue to unilateral narrowing of a mainstem bronchus. *Thorax*. 1990 Aug;45(8):637-8.
3. Majid A, Sosa AF, Ernst A, Feller-Kopman D, Folch E, Singh AK, et al. Pulmonary function and flow-volume loop patterns in patients with tracheobronchomalacia. *Respir Care*. 2013 Sep;58(9):1521-6.
4. Vincken WG, Cosio MG. Flow oscillations on the flow-volume loop: clinical and physiological implications. *Eur Respir J*. 1989 Jun;2(6):543-9.
5. Spirometry. In: *Interpreting Lung Function Tests* [Internet]. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2014 [cited 2020 Dec 27]. p.13- 36. Available from: <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/9781118405444.ch2>
6. Malolan PA, Acharya V, Unnikrishnan B. FEV6 as screening tool in spirometric diagnosis of obstructive airway disease. *Lung India Off Organ Indian Chest Soc*. 2010;27(2):63-5.
7. Vandevoorde J, Verbanck S, Schuermans D, Kartounian J, Vincken W. Obstructive and restrictive spirometric patterns: fixed cut-offs for FEV1/FEV6 and FEV6. *Eur Respir J*. 2006 Feb;27(2):378-83.
8. Empey DW. Assessment of Upper Airways Obstruction. *Br Med J*. 1972 Aug 26;3(5825):503-5.
9. Miller RD, Hyatt RE. Evaluation of obstructing lesions of the trachea and larynx by flow-volume loops. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1973 Sep;108(3):475-81.
10. Altalag A, Road J, Wilcox P, Aboulhosn K, editors. *Pulmonary Function Tests in Clinical Practice* [Internet]. 2nd ed. Springer International Publishing; 2019 [cited 2020 Dec 27]. (In Clinical Practice). Available from: <https://www.springer.com/gp/book/9783319936499>
11. Pellegrino R. Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J*. 2005 Nov 1;26(5):948-68.

Peak Expiratory Flow : Estimation and Clinical Applications



Virendra Singh¹

(1) Medical Director
 (2) Associate Director & Sr. Consultant
 Asthma Bhavan, Jaipur
 E-mail : drvirendrasingh93@gmail.com



Nishtha Singh²

Introduction :

Peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) is the maximal flow obtained on maximal short exhalation after a complete inspiratory effort. It occurs in the first 200 milliseconds of maximal expiratory effort from the total lung capacity. PEFR correlates well with the value of forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁) in patients of asthma and thus is useful in monitoring of asthma control at places where spirometry is not available^{1,2}.

Peak flow depends on expiratory muscle strength, voluntary effort, the last complete inspiratory flow and calibre of large airways. It varies with the effort of the patient. It is mainly an index of larger airways therefore may underestimate severity of asthma predominantly involving smaller airways.

PEFR is measured by both spirometers and peak flow meters. The peak flow meters are small mechanical devices although electronic devices are also present. There is no single calibration metre for all the devices and the specifications of the instruments should matched with the international guidelines³.

Method of performing PEFR :

These steps are to be followed while performing PEFR. These include:

1. The person should sit or stand straight
2. A full deep breath is taken in
3. The mouthpiece is put inside mouth between teeth
4. When the mouth seal is formed, a short breath with maximal effort is blown out
5. The exhalation should be short for 2 seconds
6. The result on the peak flow meter should be recorded and this process is repeated 2 more times (total 3 times).
7. The highest of all the readings should be recorded.

The patient should be taught the technique of using the peak flow meter at the time of prescription. Thereafter, the technique should be checked at every follow up visit. In addition, patients should be taught to observe the variability in PEFR apart from recording of absolute values.

Normal values - The values of PEFR are similar to the values obtained of forced expiratory volume (FEV₁) and forced vital capacity (FVC) in spirometry. These values also depend on the age, sex and height of the patient. PEFR values are denoted in L/minute in peak flow meter, However, in spirometry, these values are denoted in L/sec. Conversion can be performed from L/sec to L/minute by multiplying with 60 sec/min. The PEFR values obtained from spirometer are lower than peak flow meter readings. This is due to the fact that spirometer requires a prolonged expiratory effort rather than a rapid expiratory blow with a peak flow meter. The predicted PEF values are obtained by taking the reference values from the peak flow meter and not from the spirometer.

Generally, the values of PEF are slightly lower in the morning than in the afternoon or evening⁴. The highest values are generally seen between 2 p.m. to 4 p.m.. The mean diurnal variation in healthy school children was studied to be 6.2%⁵. This variation is usually less than 20% in well controlled asthmatic patients.

Correlation with lung functions :

PEF values correlates well with severity of asthmatic symptoms assessed by asthma control test (ACT)⁶⁻⁸. It varies slightly in overweight individuals⁹. It also correlates well with spirometric values like FEV₁.

Limitations :

The validity of PEF results depends a lot on the correct technique of the patient. Suboptimal effort can give false low values even in healthy subjects. Therefore, asking a patient to perform the peak flow technique in front of a doctor or trained health care personnel is important in assessing the correct technique.

Restrictive diseases affecting chest wall can cause inadequate expiratory effort leading to false low peak flow value. Therefore, in cases where the peak flow values are less than 80 percent, a check spirometry should be done.

Peak flow meter has high sensitivity in assessing severity of COPD but specificity is low.

In severe asthma, PEF can underestimate the severity of disease⁹.

Personal Best PEF :

When a patient uses peak flow values for self-management of asthma, a personal best peak flow reading should be recorded. It is usually recorded when the patient is completely well after taking maximal inhaler therapy¹⁰. A value less than 80 percent of the personal best is considered abnormal taking into account the normal diurnal variation in the airflow. Reevaluation of the personal best reading should be done every year to account for the lung growth in children and in patients with changing disease severity. The personal best value reaches a peak at the age of 18-20 years, remains at this level till 30 years in males and 40 years in females. Thereafter, the value declines¹¹.

Peak flow diaries :

For recording the personal best PEF, the peak flow charting should be done two to four times a day for two weeks when the asthma is well controlled. This chart should be examined at the next visit in order to calculate the patients personal best PEF.

Self-Management of Asthma :

The role of peak flow meter in the monitoring of asthma is still not determined. It provides an objective parameter for asthma control. Conclusive evidence of its role in improving asthma outcomes could not be determined by randomised control trials⁶. But guidelines support the use of peak flow meter charting in supplementing other assessments of asthma control in moderate to severe asthma¹. The frequency of peak flow meter reading can be changed according to the needs of patients. A patient who is a poor perceiver of symptoms may benefit from diurnal record of peak flow charting. Symptom diaries may not be very useful in such patients. On the other end, in case of stable disease, the patient needs to measure the PEF once daily only. In cases when asthmatic symptoms are expected to increase such as during pollen season or viral infection, the PEF recording frequency is increased.

Asthma action plan :

This is a written diary where medications are suggested according to severity of asthma. Patient is provided guidance to assess and identify decline in asthma control, and to change treatment plan according to the symptomatology and PEF¹. When the patients combine their symptomatology with PEF monitoring, they get both subjective and objective ways to correlate trigger exposure with severity of asthma. The patient is also guided in deciding the treatment and catching early warning signs of possible deterioration.

Green, Red and Yellow zones categorisation :

These are the zones denoting a colour scheme according to which the patients can self treat at home. These are as follows :

Green zone - This signifies that the PEF is between 80 - 100 percent of the personal best value and symptoms are not present. The patient in this zone should continue his medicines as earlier.

Yellow zone - The PEF values are between 50 - 80 percent of the personal best. This is a warning zone or a zone of caution. The patient should take his/her prescribed medicines along with additional medicines suggested by clinician in action plan.

Red zone - Here the PEF lies below 50 percent of the personal best. The patient should immediately contact his clinician and get therapy started or modified.

Adherence :

Long term adherence to PEF monitoring is difficult, therefore attaching PEF monitoring with self-treatment activities leads to improved adherence.

The effectiveness of PEF in changing the asthma outcomes is questionable. Studies could not find the advantage of using PEF in modifying asthma outcomes such as morbidity and quality of life¹². PEF monitoring is most advantageous in patients with severe asthma who have poor perception of symptoms.

Other uses of PEF :

PEF may also be useful in the monitoring of occupational asthma, assessment of severity in acute asthmatic exacerbation and home monitoring of the disease. Monitoring of PEF at work and away from work gives a good index for initial evaluation of occupational asthma. For diagnosis of asthma, spirometry is the preferred method but, in cases where spirometry is not available, peak flow meter charting is valuable.

Peak flow variability is also a valuable index. It is expressed in percentage of minimum PEF and calculated by the difference between the maximum peak flow value to the day's minimum value. If the within day or between days peak flow variability is greater than 20 percent, it is characteristic of asthma.

The role of PEF has become more important in the present COVID-19 pandemic scenario where usage of spirometry has declined drastically and value of home monitoring of asthma is increased.

References :

1. Global Initiative for Asthma. Global strategy for asthma management and prevention. <http://www.ginasthma.org> (Accessed on October 23, 2018).
2. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program: Expert Panel Report III: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma. Bethesda, MD. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2007. (NIH publication no. 08-4051) www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm (Accessed on September 19, 2018).
3. International Organization for Standardization. ISO 23747:2015: Anaesthetic and respiratory equipment -- Peak expiratory flow meters for the assessment of pulmonary function in spontaneously breathing humans. <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#iso:std:64926:en> (Accessed on September 20, 2018).
4. Bagg LR, Hughes DT. Diurnal variation in peak expiratory flow in asthmatics. *Eur J Respir Dis* 1980; 61:298.
5. Brouwer AF, Roorda RJ, Duiverman EJ, Brand PL. Reference values for peak flow and FEV1 variation in healthy schoolchildren using home spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2008; 32:1262.
6. Kotses H, Harver A, Humphries CT. Home monitoring in asthma self-management. *J Asthma* 2006; 43:649.
7. Buzoianu E, Moiceanu M, Plesca DA. Asthma Control Assessment in Children: Correlation between Asthma Control Test and Peak Expiratory Flow. *Maedica (Bucur)* 2014; 9:338.
8. Gupta A, Gupta LK, Rehan HS, Prakash A. Response to inhaled corticosteroids on serum CD28, quality of life, and peak expiratory flow rate in bronchial asthma. *Allergy Asthma Proc* 2017; 38:13.
9. Choi IS, Koh YI, Lim H. Peak expiratory flow rate underestimates severity of airflow obstruction in acute asthma. *Korean J Intern Med* 2002; 17:174.
10. Reddel HK, Marks GB, Jenkins CR. When can personal best peak flow be determined for asthma action plans? *Thorax* 2004; 59:922.
11. Dikshit MB, Raje S, Agrawal MJ. Lung functions with spirometry: an Indian perspective--I. Peak expiratory flow rates. *Indian J Physiol Pharmacol* 2005; 49:8.
12. Tierney WM, Roesner JF, Seshadri R, et al. Assessing symptoms and peak expiratory flow rate as predictors of asthma exacerbations. *J Gen Intern Med* 2004; 19:237.

Measurement of Diffusion Capacity



Ramakant Dixit

Senior Professor & Head Department of Respiratory Medicine,
J. L. N. Medical College, Ajmer (Rajasthan)
E-mail : dr.ramakantdixit@gmail.com

Introduction :

The fundamental action of the lungs is gaseous exchange that involves three components named ventilation, perfusion and diffusion. In the lungs, oxygen moves from alveolar gas into capillary blood by diffusion and into neighbouring cells by the process of diffusion. Carbon dioxide also moves by diffusion but in a direction opposite to that of oxygen.

Diffusion capacity is the volume of the given gas that diffuses across the respiratory membrane (alveolar-capillary membrane) per unit time (V_G) in response to the difference in mean pressure of the gas within the alveolus (P_{AG}) and pulmonary capillary (P_{CG}).

The diffusion capacity of the lung to any gas = DL_G

$$DL_G = \frac{V_G}{P_{AG} - P_{CG}}$$

In other words, the diffusion capacity is volume of gas that diffuses through respiratory membrane each minute for a pressure difference of 1 mm Hg and is expressed as ml/min/mmHg.

The gases that can be used to measure Diffusion capacity of lungs (DL) are Oxygen (O_2), Carbon monoxide (CO) and nitric oxide (NO) due to their unique ability to combine with Haemoglobin (Hb). Measurement of DLO_2 is difficult because oxygen transfer may be limited by ventilation-perfusion mismatch and shunting apart from diffusion. Moreover, a changing capillary PO_2 during capillary transit cannot be accurately determined. Because of difficulty in estimating the mean capillary oxygen pressure (PCO_2) which is required for calculation of pressure gradient across the alveolar-capillary membrane, CO is widely used for measuring the DL. In case of CO, mean capillary CO pressure (PC_{CO}) can be assumed to zero due to extremely high affinity of Hb to CO (240 times than O_2) so its partial pressure in the blood remains almost zero in spite of significant HbCO concentration.

$$DL_{CO} = \frac{V_{CO}}{P_1 - P_2} = \frac{V_{CO}}{P_1} = \frac{V_{CO}}{P_{ACO}}$$

There are two components of DL i.e. membrane component and the intravascular component. These can be expressed as the inverse of their effective diffusing capacity as shown in following equation by Roughton and Forster :

$$\frac{1}{DL} = \frac{1}{D_M} + \frac{1}{\theta \cdot V_c}$$

Where the DL is diffusion capacity; D_M is membrane component of resistance to diffusion; θ is rate of reaction of CO with Hb (ml CO/min/Pka/ml of blood) and V_c is the volume of blood in the pulmonary capillary bed; $1/\theta \cdot V_c$ represents intravascular resistance to diffusion.

Diffusion capacity for NO (DL_{NO}) is 4 to 5 times greater than DL_{CO} in the same subject. Since binding of NO with haemoglobin is much more fast, the time required for binding of NO with intracellular haemoglobin (Intravascular component) is negligible and contributes little to

the measured value of DL_{NO}. Therefore, DL_{NO} is assumed to be equal to D_{MNO}. Again measurement of DL_{NO} is not routine except research settings in view of high reactivity with oxygen, need for special equipment for analysis and potential cardiovascular effects etc.

Measurement of Diffusion Capacity :

There are three methods to measure Diffusion capacity :

- (1) **Single-Breath Method** : This was first described by Marie Krogh in 1914 and is almost exclusively utilized in clinical settings. The patient exhales to residual volume and then takes a maximal inhalation (up to vital capacity) of the test gas containing 0.3% CO and a diluent inert gas, 10% helium in air, holds the breath for around 10-seconds and then exhales maximally. The rate of disappearance of CO from the alveolar gas during the 10-sec breath hold is calculated. At the end of breath-holding period, a sample of alveolar gas is obtained after discarding the dead space. The exhaled sample is then analysed for CO using an infrared analyser. The inert tracer gas is used to measure the alveolar volume by dilution. Figure 1 shows the single breath method of DL_{CO} measurement.

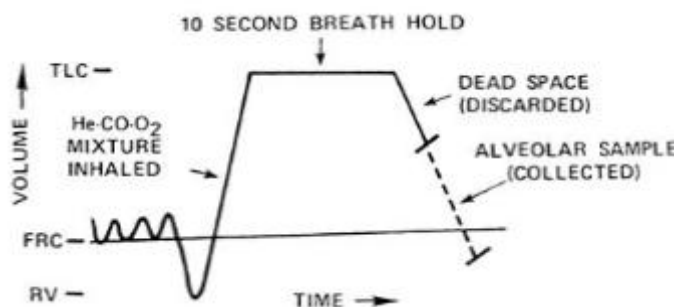


Figure 1. Single-breath method of DL_{CO} measurement

The single breath equation is :-

$$DL_{COsb} = K \times V_A \times \ln \left(\frac{F_{ACO_i} / F_{ACO_s}}{F_{AHe_i} / F_{AHe_s}} \right) \{ (PB - 47) \times t \}$$

Where V_A is the alveolar volume in liters, 't' is breath holding time in sec, and 'K' is constant. The fractional concentrations of CO and helium in inspired and sample gas (F_ACO_i/ F_ACO_s and F_AHe_i/ F_AHe_s, respectively) are indicated by appropriate terms. The patient's results are interpreted by comparing with the predicted values of the lower limit of normal person and severe respiratory impairment is defined as DL_{CO} below 45% of the predicted values. This method is easy, safe, non-invasive, rapid and widely used test to measure the diffusion capacity.

In many patients with pulmonary diseases, the single breath diffusion capacity is reduced. This decrease is usually caused by uneven ventilation-perfusion distribution and diffusion-perfusion properties in diseased lungs rather than actual change in diffusion across the respiratory membrane. Such diseased lungs tend to empty unevenly, and the post dead space sample of exhaled gas that is analysed for CO does not represent that of whole lungs and for this reason, in Europe, the diffusion capacity is termed as '**transfer factor**' to emphasize that it is more a measure of the lungs overall ability to transfer a gas into the blood rather than a specific test of diffusion. Nevertheless, the test provides considerable information about gas exchange in normal lungs. Even in patients with advanced lung disease, the results provide useful information to assess the severity and the type of pulmonary abnormality.

- (2) **Steady-state Method** : In this method, the subject breathes a low concentration of CO (about 0.1%) for about 30 secs, until a steady state of gas exchange has been reached. The constant rate of disappearance of CO from alveolar gas is then measured for a further short period, along with the alveolar concentration of the gas. This technique is better suited for measurements during exercise, when breath hold becomes a problem. This method is technically difficult and gives lower values than single breath method. This method is primarily employed in research settings.
- (3) **Intra-breath Method** : More recently, with the development of rapidly responding infrared analyser, the diffusing capacity can be measured using a single breath-slow exhalation, or 'intra-breath technique'. The gas concentrations are monitored continuously during slow inhalation and exhalation. Multiple estimates of DL can be made during a single exhalation, giving DL as a function of lung volume. Alternatively, a single estimate of DL can be obtained by applying a linear regression to exhaled CO concentration continuous measured during slow exhalation.

The measurement of DL_{CO} is variable compared to spirometric observations and criteria for acceptable measurement of DL_{CO} have been based upon relative or absolute difference between repeated measurements. The ATS/ERS consensus statement recommends reporting the average of two measurements, both of which agree within 3.0 ml/min/mm Hg or within 10 percent of the higher measured value. The

other technical considerations also accept the time of breath-holding maneuver in range of 8 to 12 seconds. It is also important to note that patient should refrain from smoking for at least 12 hours to avoid elevation of carboxyhaemoglobin levels. Inhaled bronchodilators are avoided on the day of the test and there should be no supplement oxygen for at least 15 minutes prior to or during the test.

Conditions causing decrease in DL_{CO} are :

- (1) Factors/conditions affecting V_C or pulmonary capillary bed either directly or indirectly i.e. pulmonary vascular disorders, pulmonary emboli, pulmonary vasculitis etc.
- (2) Conditions causing changes in V_C in patients with infiltrative disorders of inter alveolar septum that obliterate/destroys capillaries i.e. sarcoidosis, diffuse interstitial fibrosis, berylliosis, collagen vascular disorders etc.
- (3) Conditions causing changes in D_M by intra alveolar filling process or increasing blood diffusing pathway or true alveolar capillary block i.e. pneumonia, pulmonary oedema, pulmonary alveolar proteinosis etc.
- (4) Conditions causing decrease in both V_C and D_M i.e. removal of lung tissue by surgery (pneumonectomy), destruction of lung tissue by disease process (emphysema).
- (5) Obstructive lung diseases with non-uniform V_A/Q distribution
- (6) Conditions causing decline in θ (Hb concentration) i.e. anaemia.
- (7) During oxygen inhalation

Conditions causing increase in DL_{CO} are :

- (1) Increase DL_{CO} signifies Increase in V_C secondary to haemodynamic changes in pulmonary circulation i.e. increase in pulmonary arterial or left atrial pressure or increase in pulmonary blood flow i.e. early stages of LVF, left to right intra cardiac shunt etc.
- (2) Increase in θ i.e. polycythaemia, high altitude (decrease capillary PO_2).
- (3) During attack of bronchial asthma.
- (4) Pulmonary haemorrhage, Mueller manoeuvre, supine position etc.

Conclusion :

Measurement of diffusion lung capacity is important in defining abnormalities and responses to treatment in interstitial lung diseases. In sarcoidosis change in DL_{CO} is a more sensitive indicator of response to treatment. It is useful to measure fresh pulmonary haemorrhage in Goodpasture syndrome. It is also utilized to rule out COPD from asthma and also to rule out extra-parenchymal causes of restrictive lung diseases.

References and Suggested Reading :

1. Piantadosi CA, Huang YCT. Respiratory functions of the lung. Textbook of Pulmonary Diseases, 6th Ed. Edited by GL Baum, JD Crapo, BR Celi & JB Karlinsky, Lippincot-Raven Publishers, Philadelphia, 1998.
2. Klocke RA. Diffusion, chemical reactions and diffusion capacity. Fishman's Pulmonary Diseases and Disorders. 4th Ed., Vol 1, McGraw Hill Medical, New York, 2008.
3. Roughton FJW, Forster RE. Relative importance of diffusion and chemical reaction rates in determining rates of exchange in gas in human lung with special reference to true diffusion capacity of pulmonary membrane and volume of blood in lung capillary. J Appl Physiol. 1957; 11: 290.
4. MacIntyre N, Crapo R, Viegi G, et al. Standardisation of the single-breath determination of carbon monoxide uptake in the lung. Eur Respir J. 2005; 26: 720-35.
5. Graham BL, Brusasco V, Burgos F, et al. 2017 ERS/ATS standards for single-breath carbon monoxide uptake in the lung. Eur Respir J. 2017; 49: 1600016 [https://doi.org/10.1183/3993003.00016-2016].

Pre-Operative Pulmonary Assessment



P. Arjun ¹

(1) Senior Consultant & Group Coordinator, Pulmonary Medicine,
KIMS Health, Trivandrum, Kerala
(2) Consultant Pulmonologist, Insurance Medical Services, Govt. of Kerala
E-mail : dr.p.arjun@gmail.com



Soofia Mohammed ²

Introduction :

Postoperative pulmonary complications are an important source of perioperative morbidity and mortality. The rate of postoperative pulmonary complications across all types of surgery was 6.8 percent in a systematic review¹. Routine preoperative testing is unnecessary. It should be triggered by findings on examination, patient history, and review of systems and should be appropriate for the scheduled surgery.

Perioperative Pulmonary Physiology :

Reduced lung volume after surgery is a major factor contributing to the development of postoperative pulmonary complications. Thoracic and upper-abdominal surgeries are associated with a reduction in lung volumes in a restrictive pattern^{2,3}. Reduction of the FRC below closing volumes contributes to the risk of atelectasis, pneumonia, and ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) mismatching with consequent postoperative hypoxemia⁴. Lower abdominal surgery is associated with similar changes but to a lesser degree. Reductions in lung volumes are generally not seen with surgery on the extremities⁵.

Preoperative Risk Assessment :

Preoperative evaluation include focussed history taking, evaluation of pertinent medical records, ordering and review of indicated testing, a patient interview, and a focused physical examination followed by assessment of lung function.

Clinical Evaluation :

A complete history and physical examination are the most important elements of preoperative risk assessment. Any history suggesting unrecognized chronic lung disease or heart failure, such as exercise intolerance, unexplained dyspnea, or cough, requires further consideration⁶. All patients prior to major surgery should be screened for obstructive sleep apnea, in particular, through the use of the STOP-BANG questionnaire. Physical examination should be directed toward evidence for obstructive lung disease, especially noting decreased breath sounds, wheezes, rhonchi, or prolonged expiratory phase.

Pulmonary Function Testing :

PFTs are not needed in the majority of patients undergoing extra-thoracic surgery^{7,8}. However, all candidates for lung resection should have preoperative pulmonary function tests performed. PFTs may also be useful in patients with known or suspected respiratory disease (eg, reduced exercise tolerance, unexplained dyspnea, cigarette smoking > 20 years, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD], interstitial lung disease [ILD]).

Spirometry is widely available, and measures of the forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁) and forced vital capacity (FVC) are commonly used.

Assessment of Oxygenation and Hypoxia :

Assessment of oxygen saturation (SpO₂) can help stratify risk, particularly before high-risk surgeries. Arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis is rarely needed. ABG might be useful in patients with a resting SpO₂ < 93 percent, an abnormal serum bicarbonate, and severe abnormalities on PFTs (eg, FEV₁ < 1 litre). Current data do not support the use of preoperative arterial blood gas analyses to stratify risk for postoperative pulmonary complications.

Chest Radiographs :

Routine chest radiography is not recommended by the American College of Radiology but may be indicated in the presence of symptoms, findings on examination, or prior abnormal radiograph. It is reasonable to obtain a preoperative chest radiograph in patients with known cardiopulmonary disease and in those over age 50 years undergoing high risk surgical procedures, including upper abdominal, aortic, esophageal, and thoracic surgery.

Exercise Testing :

Cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPET), which includes calculation of maximum oxygen uptake and ventilatory anaerobic threshold, is used to assess patients with abnormal PFTs to determine the safety of planned lung resection surgery. CPET may also have a role in the evaluation of patients with unexplained dyspnea who are undergoing non-cardiopulmonary surgery⁹. A simplified form of exercise testing that can be accomplished in an office setting is the six-minute walk test.

Estimating Post-operative Pulmonary Risk of Respiratory Failure :

Risk prediction tools are useful to stratify risk when advising patients before surgery and, in some cases, to identify patients most likely to benefit from risk-reduction interventions. The ARISCAT index¹⁰ use readily available clinical information and provides an estimate of the risk of any postoperative pulmonary complications. The two Gupta risk calculators are used to establish the risk of a single complication, either pneumonia or respiratory failure¹¹. The Arozullah index¹² will be of use primarily in research settings. These tools are a useful starting point when estimating pulmonary risk before major non -cardiac surgery.

Pre-operative pulmonary physiologic evaluation for Lung Resection :

Lung resection is frequently considered in patients with lung cancer, and less commonly, in patients with some benign disorders (e.g., localized bronchiectasis). In many cases surgical resection needs to be considered in patients with impaired pulmonary function who have risk factors for complications. The evaluation involves assessing the effect of resection on the postoperative level of lung function as well as on the development of cardiopulmonary complications.

General Assessment including Cardiovascular Risk :

For patients who are being evaluated for pulmonary resective surgery (i.e., lobectomy, pneumonectomy, wedge resection), a general history and examination should be performed. The clinician should also specifically look for a past history of resections (eg, surgery for old tuberculosis or bronchiectasis), and presence of other chronic lung diseases like COPD, ILD which can affect tolerability of lung resection and post resective lung function.

Chest Computed Tomography :

With the specific resective surgery in mind (ie, pneumonectomy versus lobectomy), imaging should be evaluated for the anatomy of the region of the lung to be resected and can also be used to count segments for postoperative lung function prediction.

Pre-operative Pulmonary Function :

The forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁; ie, spirometry) and the diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide (DL_{CO}) should be measured in all patients in whom resectional surgery is being considered. If testing has not been performed within the previous 6 to 12 months, new testing should be requested. American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP)¹³ and the European Respiratory Society/European Society of thoracic surgeons (ERS/ESTS)¹⁴ guidelines are available for physiological evaluation of patients being planned for resective surgery especially for lung cancer.

Patients with a preoperative FEV₁ and DL_{CO} that are both ≥ 80 percent predicted do not need to undergo further testing for assessing postoperative lung function or risk. These patients are considered low risk and can generally tolerate lobectomy or pneumonectomy.

Patients with a preoperative FEV₁ or DL_{CO} < 80 percent predicted need to undergo further evaluation to allow calculation of predicted postoperative (PPO) lung function. While the ACCP supports PPO lung function assessment in this group, the ERS/ESTS suggest performing a cardiopulmonary exercise test (CPET).

PPO values for FEV₁ and DL_{CO} take into account the preoperative values, the amount of lung tissue to be resected and its contribution to overall lung function. The contribution of the region of lung that is to be resected to overall lung function can be determined by quantitative lung scintigraphy or by lung segment counting; the latter is typically performed on chest computed tomography. Perfusion scintigraphy is the most widely used method in patients undergoing pneumonectomy while lung segment counting is recommended for patients undergoing lobectomy.

Quantitative lung scintigraphy : Perfusion method (pneumonectomy) :

$PPO\ FEV_1 = \text{preoperative } FEV_1 \times (1 - \text{fraction of total perfusion in the resected lung measured on radionuclide perfusion}).$

The absolute value obtained is then compared with the predicted value for FEV₁ for that individual's height, age, and gender to obtain the percent predicted postoperative FEV₁. The same formula can be used to predict PPO DL_{CO} by substituting values for diffusing capacity.

Segment counting : Anatomic method (lobectomy) :

$PPO\ FEV_1 = \text{preoperative } FEV_1 \times (1 - a/b)$ where "a" is the number of segments to be resected and "b" is the total number of unobstructed segments .

Patients with both PPO FEV₁ and PPO DL_{CO} ≥ 60 percent predicted are considered low risk and should tolerate surgical lobectomy or pneumonectomy.

For patients with either PPO FEV₁ or PPO DL_{CO} < 60 percent predicted, and where both values are ≥ 30 percent predicted, a low technology exercise test (either stair climb or a shuttle walk test) should be performed. An incremental shuttle walk test (ISWT) distance greater than 400 meters (ie, 40 x 10 meter “shuttles”) has been associated with a maximum oxygen uptake (VO₂ max) ≥ 15 mL/kg/minute¹; these patients can undergo major thoracic surgery and do not need a CPET. Patients whose exercise ability is equal to or above 22 meters on the stair climbing test are considered low risk and the patient is deemed to have sufficient pulmonary function to undergo resectional surgery.

If either PPO FEV₁ or PPO DL_{CO} is < 30 percent, a formal CPET with measurement of VO₂ max should be performed, where those who achieve a VO₂ max > 20 mL/kg/minute (or over 75 percent predicted) are considered low risk, and < 10 mL/kg/minute (or < 35 percent predicted) are high risk. Patients who achieve a VO₂ max between 10 and 20 mL/kg/minute have a wide range of risk and are considered as “moderate risk” per the ACCP guidelines, which also suggests individualizing the approach in this population (Figure 1).

In clinical practice, a rule of thumb which can be applied if methods to calculate PPO FEV₁ or DL_{CO} or access to CPET are not there, is to follow the recommendations of the BTS¹⁵ which states that no further respiratory function tests are required for a lobectomy if the post-bronchodilator FEV₁ is > 1.5 litres and for a pneumonectomy if the post-bronchodilator FEV₁ is > 2.0 litres, provided that there is no evidence of interstitial lung disease or unexpected disability due to shortness of breath.

Another useful practice point in patients posted for thoracic surgeries and major upper abdominal surgeries, is to start them on breathing exercises especially incentive spirometry in the preoperative period itself. This has been shown to greatly reduce the incidence of post operative pulmonary atelectasis.

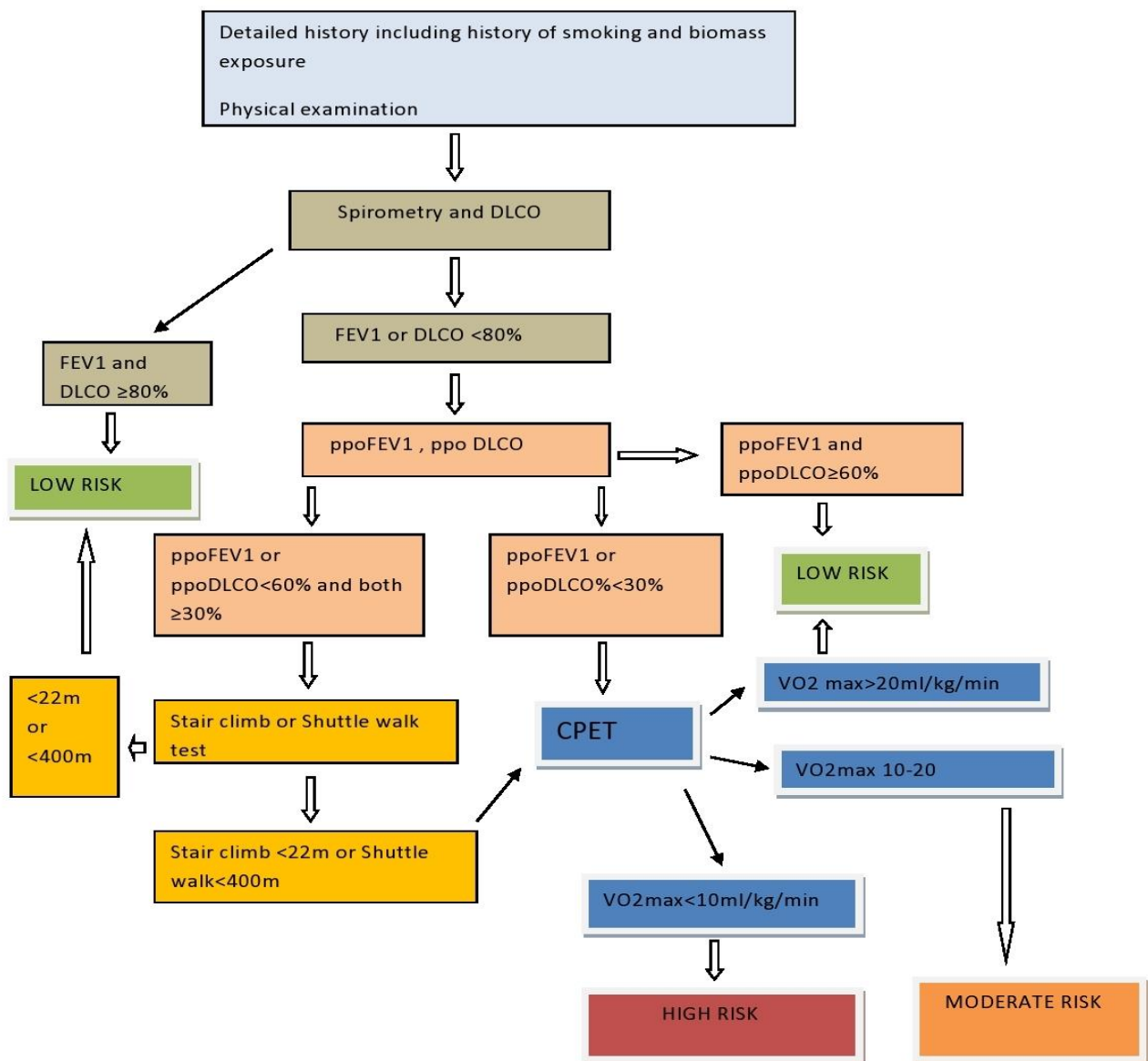


Figure 1 : Algorithm for pulmonary preoperative assessment of patients requiring lung resection

Conclusion :

Patients with pulmonary pathologies require thorough evaluation and planning for optimal outcomes following surgical procedures. The preoperative assessment is thus a valuable opportunity to mitigate risk and optimize and educate patients.

References :

1. Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE et al. Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for non cardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med.* 2006;144(8):581.
2. Meyers JR, Lembeck L, O'Kane H et al. Changes in functional residual capacity of the lung after operation. *Arch Surg.* 1975;110(5):576.
3. Craig DB. Postoperative recovery of pulmonary function. *Anesth Analg.* 1981;60(1):46.
4. Marshall BE, Wyche MQ Jr. Hypoxemia during and after anesthesia. *Anesthesiology.* 1972;37(2):178.
5. Tisi GM. Preoperative evaluation of pulmonary function. Validity, indications, and benefits. *Am Rev Respir Dis.* 1979;119(2):293.
6. Bierle DM, Raslau D, Regan DW et al. Preoperative Evaluation Before Noncardiac Surgery. *Mayo Clin Proc.* 2020;95(4):807.
7. Qaseem A, Snow V, Fitterman N, et al. Risk assessment for and strategies to reduce perioperative pulmonary complications for patients undergoing noncardiothoracic surgery: a guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med.* 2006;144(8):57.
8. Czoski-Murray C, Lloyd Jones M, McCabe C et al. What is the value of routinely testing full blood count, electrolytes and urea, and pulmonary function tests before elective surgery in patients with no apparent clinical indication and in subgroups of patients with common comorbidities: a systematic review of the clinical and cost-effective literature. *Health Technol Assess.* 2012 Dec;16(50):i-xvi, 1-159.
9. Smith TB, Stonell C, Purkayastha S et al. Cardiopulmonary exercise testing as a risk assessment method in non cardio-pulmonary surgery: a systematic review. *Anaesthesia.* 2009;64(8):883.
10. Canet J, Gallart L, Gomar C et al. ARISCAT Group Prediction of postoperative pulmonary complications in a population-based surgical cohort *Anesthesiology.* 2010 Dec;113(6):1338-50.
11. Gupta H, Gupta PK, Fang X et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator predicting postoperative respiratory failure. *Chest.* 2011;140(5):1207.
12. Arozullah AM, Daley J, Henderson WG et al. Multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative respiratory failure in men after major noncardiac surgery. The National Veterans Administration Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *Ann Surg.* 2000;232(2):242.
13. Brunelli A, Kim AW, Berger KI et al. Physiologic evaluation of the patient with lung cancer being considered for resectional surgery: Diagnosis and management of lung cancer, 3rd ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest.* 2013 May;143(5 Suppl):e166S-90S.
14. Brunelli A, Charloux A, Bolliger et al. CT ERS/ESTS clinical guidelines on fitness for radical therapy in lung cancer patients (surgery and chemo-radiotherapy). *Eur Respir J.* 2009;34(1):17.
15. Armstrong P, Congleton J, Jagoe T et al. Guidelines on the selection of patients with lung cancer for surgery British Thoracic Society and Society of Cardiothoracic Surgeons of Great Britain and Ireland Working Party. *Thorax* 2001;56:89-108

Assessment of Fitness to Fly



Naveen Dutt ¹

(1) Additional Professor
Department of Pulmonary medicine,
All India Institute of Medical Sciences, Jodhpur
E-mail : drnaveendutt@yahoo.co.in

Kunal Deokar ²

Shahir Asfahan ³

(2) & (3) DM Fellows



Introduction to In-flight Physiology :

Atmospheric pressure is maximum at the sea level and decreases logarithmically with ascent due to decrease in gravitational forces. The atmospheric pressure at the sea level is 760 mm Hg. By Dalton's law, the total pressure of the mixture of the gases is equal to the sum of the pressures exerted by each gas in the mixture. Oxygen constitutes approximately 21% of air, so the partial pressure of the oxygen at the sea level is 160 mm Hg. Commercial flights fly through the troposphere at an altitude of 38000 feet, but the aircraft cabin is pressurised to the altitude of 8000 feet. The gas composition of the troposphere is constant. At an altitude of 8000 feet, the atmospheric pressure is 564 mm Hg, so the partial pressure of oxygen (PaO₂) is 118 mm Hg, which is equivalent to breathing 15 % oxygen at sea level leading to hypobaric hypoxia, the arterial oxygen saturation (SpO₂) dropping to 85-91%. Normal healthy individuals can tolerate this change and do not develop symptoms. However, those with pre-existing lung or cardiovascular diseases may not tolerate these changes. By Boyle's law, the volume of a gas is inversely proportional to the pressure to which it is subjected, at a constant temperature. As the atmospheric pressure decreases, the volume of the gas in the closed cavities increase, human body temperature being constant at 37 degree Celsius. Thus, there is a risk of rupture of bullae or increase in size of closed pneumothorax if present¹.

Pre-flight Assessment :

Predictive Equations : The following equations were recommended by the British Thoracic Society (BTS) for the estimation of in-flight PaO₂².

- (1) PaO₂ (Alt) (mmHg) = 0.410 PaO₂ (ground) (mmHg) + 1.7652
- (2) PaO₂ (Alt) (mmHg) = 0.519 PaO₂ (ground) (mmHg) + 11.855 FEV₁ – 1.760
- (3) PaO₂ (Alt) (mmHg) = 0.453 PaO₂ (ground) (mmHg) + 0.386 (FEV₁ %) + 2.44.9
- (4) PaO₂ (Alt) (mmHg) = 22.8 – (2.74 X altitude in thousands of feet) + 0.68 x PaO₂ (ground) (mmHg)

Martin et al in their study, assessed the performance of these predictive equations against hypoxic challenge test and found that predictive equations led to an over-estimation of the requirement of in-flight oxygen³.

50 meters walk test, which involves the ability to walk a distance of 50 meters without distress, has been used in the past for assessment of fitness to fly due to its simplicity of use. However, many studies have shown poor correlation between this and the need in-flight supplemental oxygenation. It has been superseded by the validated and standardized 6-minute walk test (6MWT)⁴.

Edvardsen et al in their landmark study conducted a prospective trial of patients using hypoxic challenge test as gold standard. They established the value of 6 minute walk test and oxygen saturation at sea level as a reliable means to diagnose the need for in-flight oxygen as well as preventing the need to conduct a resource intensive test like hypoxic challenge in a large proportion of patients⁴.

- If the baseline SpO₂ < 92%, patients will require supplemental oxygen during flight.
- If the baseline SpO₂ > 95% and SpO₂ post 6MWT is > 84% , they may not require oxygen during flight.
- If SpO₂ > 95% and SpO₂ post 6MWT is < 84%, they will require HCT.
- If the baseline SpO₂ is 92-95% and SpO₂ post 6MWT is < 84% they will require supplemental oxygen during the flight.
- If SpO₂ is 92-95% and SpO₂ post 6MWT is > 84% they would require HCT.
- With HCT if the PaO₂ < 50 mmHg or SpO₂ < 85 % while breathing a mixture with 15% oxygen concentration, then in-flight oxygen may be required⁴.

Although the study was restricted to patients with COPD, general contours of the problem and the likely solutions could be drawn from it. A subsequent study did not show the effect of 6MWT as a good discriminating feature in obese individuals, highlighting the potential that remains to be addressed in this area⁵.

Hypoxia altitude simulation test :

Also known as Hypoxic Challenge Test (HCT) is considered as gold standard in assessing the need for in-flight supplemental oxygenation. This involves drawing a sample for arterial blood gases (ABG) at the beginning of the test. 15 percent oxygen mixture is administered via a

tight-fitting mask or mouthpiece. Repeat ABG sample is drawn anytime SpO₂ drops below 85% or at the end of 20 minutes. If PaO₂ is less than 50 mmHg at the end of the study, patients may require in-flight supplemental oxygenation⁶.

Hypobaric chambers : These chambers simulate the reduced pressure conditions as well as reduced oxygen concentration as would be present in a flight. These devices have been used in a few studies; however, they have limited availability for routine use⁶.

Diseases	Remarks
Asthma	Risk of bronchospasm is present due to mucosal water loss due to low cabin humidity. HCT should be performed for patients of severe asthma irrespective of their baseline oxygen saturation. In case of a recent history of exacerbation, patients should be allowed to fly only when they are stable and the need for the use of rescue medications have reached their usual baseline. All patients should keep their rescue inhaler with a spacer device in their hand baggage. Patients of severe asthma should also keep oral corticosteroids with them ¹ .
COPD	Risk of bronchospasm is present due to mucosal water loss due to low cabin humidity. In case of a recent history of exacerbation, patients should be allowed to fly only when they are stable usually 6 weeks after an exacerbation. All patients should keep their inhalers with a spacer device in their hand baggage. Patients should be evaluated for the presence of pneumothorax and bullous lung disease. Those with untreated closed pneumothorax should not be allowed to fly. In those with a prior history of pneumothorax, the risk of recurrence should be explained. Risk of recurrence is low if pleurodesis has been performed. They are at a high risk of VTE. For the prevention of VTE, they should be advised to drink plenty of water, remain mobile, may consider the use of graduated compression stockings, avoid alcohol, LMWH or NOAC's should be used when the flight duration is more than 6 hours. LMWH 40 mg s.c on the morning of the flight and on the next day is recommended ^{1,7} .
Interstitial lung diseases	HCT should be considered if DL _{CO} < 50% of predicted, PaO ₂ < 70 mm Hg or SpO ₂ < 95% after exercise ¹
Infectious diseases	Patients of acute otitis media should travel only after two weeks of the episode. Those with highly contagious infections like measles, mumps, chicken pox, SARS, MERS, COVID-19 should be allowed to fly only when they become non-infectious. Patients with drug sensitive pulmonary tuberculosis should be allowed to fly only when two sputum smears are AFB negative. Those with drug resistant pulmonary TB should be allowed to fly when two consecutive AFB cultures are negative ^{1,8} .
Obstructive sleep apnea	Should avoid overnight travel. If already on CPAP, and overnight travel is unavoidable, should carry the CPAP device. Prior approval from the concerned airlines is necessary for carriage of the device and its battery. Alcohol should be avoided as it increases upper airway collapsibility ¹ .
Pulmonary embolism	<div style="text-align: center;"> <pre> graph TD A[In-flight hypoxia] --> B[Pulmonary vasoconstriction] B --> C[Worsening of V/Q Mismatch] B --> D[Increased pulmonary pressure's] D --> E[Right heart strain] </pre> </div> <p>It is prudent to delay air travel for at least 2 weeks following the episode. Patient should be on anticoagulation to prevent recurrent embolism¹.</p>
Pulmonary hypertension	Those in NYHA WHO class I and II are fit to fly. Those in NYHA WHO class III and IV should receive in-flight oxygen by nasal prongs at a rate of 2L/min. If already on long-term oxygen therapy (LTOT), then flow rate should be doubled during travel ¹ .
Lung cancer	They can travel if stable and if the oxygen saturation is normal at the sea level. However, they are at an increased risk of venous thromboembolism, pneumothorax, and infections particularly if receiving chemotherapy. For the prevention of VTE, they should be advised to drink plenty of water, remain mobile, may consider the use of graduated compression stockings, avoid alcohol, LMWH or NOAC's should be used when the flight duration is more than 6 hours. LMWH 40 mg s.c on the morning of the flight and on the next day is recommended ^{1,7} .
Chest wall and neuromuscular disorders	If FVC is less than 1 litre, HCT should be performed. For patients who are on NIV, they will require NIV during flight. Prior airline approval should be taken for the use of the device in-flight. Battery/charging arrangements must be done beforehand and permission for carrying the same should also be taken. NIV settings may need adjustment at high altitudes. They should preferably travel during daytime and avoid sleeping during daytime in the flight ¹ .

Table 1 : Disease specific recommendations for Fitness to Fly

References :

1. Shrikrishna D, Coker RK; Air Travel Working Party of the British Thoracic Society Standards of Care Committee. Managing passengers with stable respiratory disease planning air travel: British Thoracic Society recommendations. *Thorax*. 2011 Sep;66(9):831-3.
2. Seccombe LM, Peters MJ. Oxygen supplementation for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients during air travel. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2006 Mar;12(2):140-4.
3. Martin SE, Bradley JM, Buick JB, Bradbury I, Elborn JS. Flight assessment in patients with respiratory disease: hypoxic challenge testing vs. predictive equations. *QJM Mon J Assoc Physicians*. 2007 Jun;100(6):361-7.
4. Edvardsen A, Akerø A, Christensen CC, Ryg M, Skjønsberg OH. Air travel and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a new algorithm for pre-flight evaluation. *Thorax*. 2012 Nov;67(11):964-9.
5. Choosing an Adequate Test to Determine Fitness for Air Travel in Obese Individuals - CHEST [Internet]. [cited 2020 Dec 18]. Available from: [https://journal.chestnet.org/article/S0012-3692\(19\)31450-3/abstract](https://journal.chestnet.org/article/S0012-3692(19)31450-3/abstract)
6. Stoller JK. Evaluation of patients for supplemental oxygen during air travel. :29.
7. WHO. Tuberculosis and Air Travel: Guidelines for prevention and control 3rd edition. 1465 Geneva: WHO; 2013.
8. Smith D, Toff W, Joy M, Dowdall N, Johnston R, Clark L, Gibbs S, Boon N, Hackett D, Aps C, Anderson M, Cleland J. Fitness to fly for passengers with cardiovascular disease. *Heart*. 2010 Aug;96 Suppl 2:ii1-16.

Body Plethysmography



Lavina Mirchandani

Professor & Head , Department of Pulmonary Medicine
K. J. Somaiya medical college, hospital and research centre, Mumbai
E-mail : drlavinamir@gmail.com

Introduction :

Body Plethysmography is a technique which provides a detailed assessment of lung function by measurement of static lung volumes and specific airway resistance. The word Plethysmography is derived from the Greek 'plethysmos' which means increase or enlargement and 'graphe' means writing, hence plethysmograph refers to a device which records changes in the volume of an organ or limb. It was nearly 65 years ago in 1956 that Arthur B. DuBois, Julius H. Comroe Jr. and their colleagues published two papers on the use of body plethysmography. The foundation of the technique was laid by Eduard Pflüger who described a "pneumonometer" as far back as 1882 followed by Jere Mead, who pointed out that there are three important factors altering the pressure when a person is breathing inside a closed chamber. These are the increase in temperature as a result of body heat, the change in the number of gas molecules as oxygen is taken up and carbon dioxide is eliminated, and any change in volume of some part of the gas. DuBois's simple but brilliant contribution was to make the person breathe shallowly and rapidly, thus making it practical to record lung gas volume and airway resistance without confounding factors.

Rationale for Body Plethysmography :

- Body Plethysmography can record static lung volumes and capacities like Residual Volume (RV), Functional Residual Capacity (FRC) and Total Lung Capacity (TLC); as well as airway resistance and airway conductance; parameters that cannot be measured by a simple Spirometry which involves the measurement of dynamic lung volumes and flow rates. It also contributes in the procedure of measurement of static compliance of the lungs.
- Body Plethysmography can record all of these during breathing at rest and forced manoeuvres are not required, hence can be done even by relatively dyspnoeic patients.
- Body Plethysmography can even measure spirometric data using the same flow meter as used for resistance measurements.
- Thus it is a complete lung function testing system that measures lung mechanics parameters during normal and forced breathing in a single sequence of linked measurements.
- Moreover, Body Plethysmography measures lung volumes of both well ventilated and poorly ventilated areas of the lung compared to the Dilutional methods of measurement. Thus volume of non-communicating bullae can be estimated by the difference in volume measured by these two methods.

Indications for Whole-Body Plethysmography :

- 1) Measurement of lung volumes to distinguish between restrictive and obstructive processes as these may not be obvious from simple spirometry
- 2) Diagnosis of hyperinflation and evaluation of obstructive lung diseases, such as bullous emphysema and cystic fibrosis, that may produce artificially low results if measured using other methods
- 3) Estimation of volume of non-communicating bullae
- 4) The finding of a significant difference between FVC and SVC is an indication to determine static lung volumes
- 5) Quantification of restrictive lung disease
- 6) Further assessment of respiratory symptoms (breathlessness, cough, sputum)

- 7) Measurement of lung volumes when the subject is unable to perform multibreath tests
- 8) Follow-up assessment of the course of disease and response to treatment
- 9) Airway obstruction reversibility and provocation tests
- 10) Evaluation of resistance to airflow
- 11) Lung volumes are a pre- requirement in lung volume reduction surgery (LVRS) and surgery for bullous emphysema as the preoperative RV/TLC ratio is directly related to improvement in symptoms of breathlessness

Contra-indications for Whole-Body Plethysmography :

- 1) The general contradictions for Pulmonary Function testing apply to Body Plethysmography also, thus it should not be performed in patients of :
 - Recent abdominal, thoracic, or eye surgery
 - Hemodynamic instability
 - Unstable angina/ recent myocardial infarction within 1 month
 - Symptoms of acute severe illness like Chest pain, nausea, vomiting, high fever, dyspnea
 - Recent hemoptysis
 - Pneumothorax
 - Recent history of abdominal, thoracic, or cerebral aneurysm

- 2) Specifically, body plethysmography is impractical in patients with marked obesity, skeletal abnormalities or claustrophobia.

Principle of Body Plethysmography :

The principle of body plethysmography is based on Boyle’s Law which states that in an enclosed gaseous system under isothermal conditions, the changes in pressure and volume of a gas are inversely related. This means that the product of pressure and volume of the gas remains constant. Thus $PV = (P + \Delta P) (V + \Delta V)$, where P and V are the pressure and volume of a mass of gas respectively, ΔP is the change in pressure and ΔV is the associated change in volume of the same mass of gas in the defined space and at constant temperature.

Technique of Body Plethysmography :

Apparatus : Body plethysmograph, colloquially known as Body Box, is essentially a rigid closed box where the patient sitting inside it makes respiratory manoeuvres resulting in small changes of pressure, which are recorded. There are three different types of body plethysmographs available :

- i) The pressure plethysmograph, in which pressure during breathing varies while volume remains constant
- ii) The volume plethysmograph, in which the volume varies during breathing while the pressure remains constant
- iii) The pressure corrected, flow plethysmograph which combines the characteristics of pressure and volume plethysmographs.

The conceptual basis of all three devices is the same, but the most commonly used is the pressure plethysmograph. The pressure body plethysmograph or body box is a chamber resembling a transparent telephone box in which a person can be comfortably seated and which is closed with an airtight seal during measurement (Figure 1).

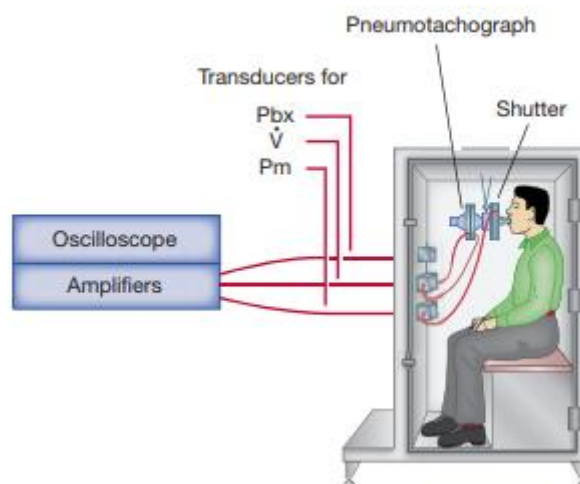


Figure 1 : Schematic Diagram of Pressure Body Plethysmograph

It has a pneumotachograph and transducer for measuring flow and volume and two pressure transducers, one for measuring pressure inside the box relative to ambient pressure (Pbx) and the other for pressure at the mouth (Pm). A solenoid operated shutter mechanism is situated between the mouth piece and the pneumotachograph. The three transducers are connected to an amplifying system so that Pbx and Pm are displayed simultaneously on the X and Y axes respectively, of an oscilloscope.

Method for determination of FRC by Body Plethysmography :

The patient is seated comfortably within the box with nose clip in place, hands on his cheek to minimize pressure changes due to the oral cavity and asked to breathe quietly (tidal breathing) into the mouthpiece. After few breaths, at end of quiet expiration as seen on spirogram, the shutter is closed and patient is asked to pant (rapid shallow breaths) gently into the mouthpiece. In this closed system with no air flow as shutter is closed, the respiratory movements cause changes in both mouth pressure and box pressure. The box pressure is calibrated to volume changes initially itself by introducing a small known volume of air into the sealed box and recording the pressure changes. The mouth pressure reflects the alveolar pressure when the shutter is closed as there is no airflow. The changes in mouth pressure and box pressure or lung volume caused by panting against a closed shutter in the enclosed body box, appear on the oscilloscope as a closed loop (Figure 2). The change of volume by which the lung generates positive or negative alveolar pressure is also known as shift volume. Measurement of the slope of this loop is used to determine the volume of the gas in the lungs. When shutter closure is at end tidal expiration, the lung volume would be the FRCpleth, also known as thoracic gas volume or TGV.

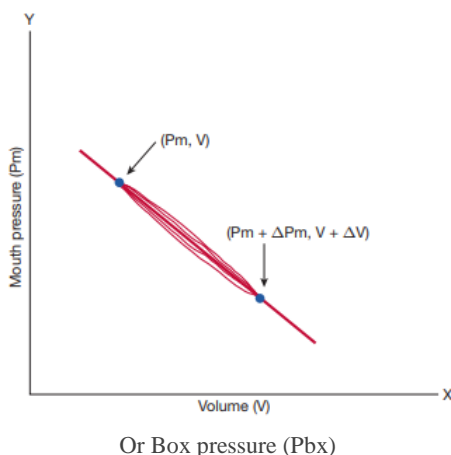


Figure 2 : Pressure Volume tracing of Body Plethysmograph

Pm = pressure at the mouth which reflects alveolar pressure when shutter closed,

Pbx = pressure in the box which reflects lung volume as change in Pbx is calibrated initially to record the change in volume,

ΔP = change in pulmonary pressure produced by respiratory efforts,

ΔV = change in gas volume in the lungs

Measuring airflow through the mouthpiece during tidal breathing, maximal inspiration to TLC and maximal expiration to RV followed by the measurement of TGV is done as a combined procedure. This should be followed by a prolonged forced expiration to determine the forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁) and the forced vital capacity (FVC). The spirometric data can be conveniently recorded by the same flow meter as used for resistance measurements. In this way information on lung mechanics during normal and forced breathing can be obtained in a single sequence of linked measurements enabling both static and dynamic lung volumes to be calculated by the body plethysmograph. The procedure is repeated several times until reproducible results are obtained.

Mathematical Application of Boyles Law to FRC determination by Body Plethysmograph :

Boyles law states that : **$PV = (P + \Delta P) (V + \Delta V)$**

On inspiration, pressure at the mouth falls relative to atmospheric pressure and due to chest wall expansion, the box pressure rises. Thus above equation is written as:

$$PV = (P - \Delta P) (V + \Delta V)$$

$$\text{Thus, } PV = PV + P\Delta V - V\Delta P - \Delta V\Delta P$$

As ΔVΔP value is negligible, it can be ignored and then the equation is written as:

$$P\Delta V = V\Delta P \text{ or } V = P \Delta V / \Delta P$$

Where V = FRC since shutter is closed at end tidal expiration, P is alveolar pressure or Pm which is known and ΔV / ΔP is the inverse of the slope of the loop on the oscilloscope. Thus FRC can be calculated by Body Plethysmography.

Method for determination of Airway Resistance by Body Plethysmography :

Airway resistance and specific airway conductance are measured at the same time as lung volumes in body plethysmograph. Airway resistance (R_{aw}) is the pressure required (alveolar to mouth) to generate a unit of airflow through the airways. Thus it is the ratio of the driving pressure for flow to the actual rate of air flow along the airways including mouth, nasopharynx, larynx, and central and peripheral airways. However, since the alveolar pressure that is needed for the determination of the proper airway resistance is not available during free breathing, the measurement is done by relating flow rate to box pressure, which are directly measurable by body plethysmography. The ratio of box pressure to flow rate, expressed in suitable units, is called specific airway resistance or sR_{aw} . It is actually not a resistance as it is the product of airway resistance and the lung volume at which the R_{aw} was measured and depends on both lung volume and airway resistance. If airflow is plotted on the vertical axis versus box pressure on the horizontal axis, closed curves are obtained. The reciprocal slope of these breathing loops represents specific airway resistance. In healthy subjects the curves are approximately straight lines, while in patients with respiratory diseases various patterns can be recognized (Figure 3).

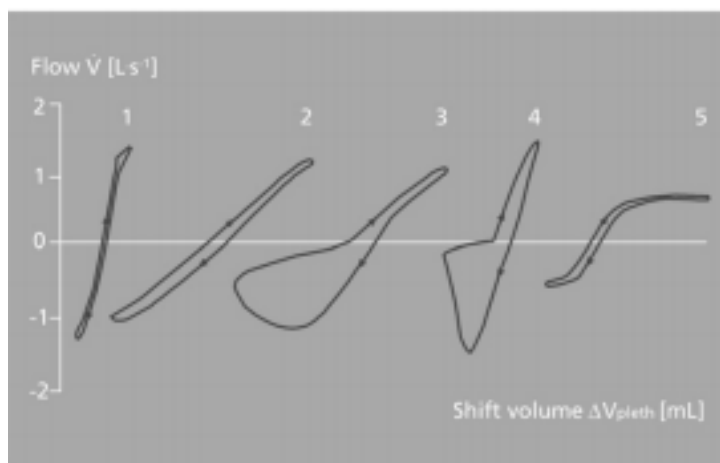


Figure 3: Schematic representation of sR_{aw} loops in 1) normal subject, 2) patient with increase large airways resistance, 3) patient with chronic airflow obstruction, 4) patient with obesity or diaphragmatic paralysis, and, 5) patient with upper airway obstruction

In case of asymmetries in the loops, for correct interpretation, it is necessary to determine an average sR_{aw} , which is also known as effective specific airway resistance or sR_{eff} and this is done by modern software by computing a weighted average over the breathing cycle.

Airway conductance (G_{aw}) is the reciprocal of R_{aw} , thus it is the airflow generated per unit of pressure. Specific airway conductance (SG_{aw}) is usually reported because the conductance of the airways increases with lung volume. SG_{aw} is calculated by dividing airway conductance by lung volume. Thus $SG_{aw} = G_{aw}/V$ where V is the lung volume at which G_{aw} was measured.

Mathematical determination of Airway Resistance by Body Plethysmograph :

The patient seated in the Body Box is asked to pant at a rate of 2 breaths/second against the mouthpiece, while airflow is measured using a pneumotachograph. The reciprocal of the slope of the curve obtained by plotting of box pressure on X axis and airflow on Y axis, gives the sR_{aw} . While the panting continues, the shutter at the airway opening is closed so that airflow is transiently interrupted and the changes in pressure in the plethysmograph (P_{bx}) which correspond to changes in lung volume, and pressure at the mouth (P_m) are recorded on the X and Y axes respectively, of the oscilloscope. Since there is no airflow as shutter is closed, P_m equals the alveolar pressure (P_A). This is the same technique which is used to measure FRC_{pleth} and in fact R_{aw} is normally estimated at FRC to standardize the measurement.

The first procedure with open shutter provides the relationship between airflow and P_{bx} . The second procedure with closed shutter determines the relationship between P_A and P_{bx} . Airway resistance is calculated by dividing the slope of the loop obtained by plotting P_A versus P_{bx} while the shutter is closed by the slope obtained by plotting Flow versus P_{bx} while the shutter is open.

$$R_{aw} = \frac{P_A / P_{bx}}{V' / P_{bx}}$$

$$\text{Thus } R_{aw} = P_A / V'$$

Where R_{aw} = airway resistance ($cmH_2O/L/s$), P_A = alveolar pressure (cmH_2O), V' = airflow (L/s)

Interpretation of Body Plethysmography report :

A Pulmonary function test report cannot be viewed in isolation and must be interpreted along with the clinical diagnosis as well as supporting lab data and imaging. A body plethysmography report is to be read with the accompanying simple spirometry report. It specifically displays the FRC, RV, TLC, RV/TLC ratio, ERV and effective SRaw (sReff) as seen in Figure 4.

<i>sRaw & FRCpleth</i>			
	Pred	Pre	%(Pre/Pred)
sR eff	1.18	3.25	276
FRCpl	3.47	4.38	126
ERV	0.92	0.74	80
RV	2.54	3.64	143
TLC	6.26	5.94	95
RV%TLC	42.04	61.22	146
FVC	3.41	2.30	68

Figure 4 : Body Plethysmography Report

- 1) Body Plethysmograph report has to be read in conjunction with simple spirometry and it is determined whether spirometry is normal or shows restriction or obstruction.
- 2) A **restrictive disorder** can be suspected from spirometry when vital capacity (VC) is reduced and the ratio of forced expiratory volume in 1 s (FEV₁) to FVC (FEV₁/FVC) is normal or elevated.
 - a) However, it is definitely proven only by a decrease in TLC. In fact, restrictive disorders are defined as TLC being below the 5th percentile of normal values.
 - b) There is also a reduction in ALL lung volumes i.e TLC, FRC, RV in a restrictive disorder.
 - c) If the restriction is due to an intrinsic cause like interstitial lung disease, the RV/TLC ratio remains normal
 - d) If the restriction is due to extrinsic causes like kyphoscoliosis or neuromuscular disease, then the TLC is reduced because of mechanical limitation to chest wall expansion or due to respiratory muscle weakness while RV is normal because lung tissue and elastic recoil are normal; hence RV/TLC ratio will be high.
- 3) An **obstructive disorder** can be suspected from spirometry when the ratio of forced expiratory volume in 1 s (FEV₁) to FVC (FEV₁/FVC) is reduced.
 - a) The dynamic compression of airways in obstructive lung diseases and decrease in lung recoil due to destruction of elastic tissue especially in emphysema; results in increase of some lung volumes i.e TLC, FRC and RV. The Vital capacity however may be normal or may be reduced due to air trapping.
 - b) The increase in RV is disproportionate to the increase in TLC leading to an increased RV/TLC ratio in obstructive lung disease. It is called Air trapping if the TLC is normal with an increase in RV/TLC; while an increase in both TLC and RV/TLC is called hyperinflation
 - c) Values of RV above the 95th percentile but below 140 % predicted are indicative of mild, values between 140 and 170 % predicted of moderate, and values above 170 % predicted of severe hyperinflation.
 - d) The disproportionate increase in RV leads to reduction in FVC as TLC = RV + VC, this is called 'pseudo-restriction'.
- 4) In some patients there may be a **mixed pattern** of restriction and obstruction. This may be indicated by an obstructive pattern on spirometry combined with reduced lung volumes.
- 5) Lung volumes are also useful when there are **equivocal findings** on spirometry. A finding of raised TLC or RV supports a diagnosis of obstructive airway disease even when FEV₁ and FVC are in normal range, albeit at lower limits. Table 1 summarizes the interpretation of lung volumes measured by Body Box.

VOLUME	RESTRICTIVE INTRINSIC	RESTRICTIVE EXTRINSIC	AIR TRAPPING	HYPERINFLATION
TLC	DECREASED	DECREASED	NORMAL	INCREASED
VC	DECREASED	DECREASED	DECREASED	NORMAL <i>or</i> SLIGHTLY INCREASED
FRC	DECREASED	DECREASED	INCREASED	INCREASED
RV	DECREASED	NORMAL	INCREASED	INCREASED
RV/TLC %	NORMAL	INCREASED	INCREASED	INCREASED

Table 1 : Summary of Interpretation of Body Plethysmography

6) Interpretation of Airway Resistance :

Defining the range of normal for Raw is difficult because of inter and intra individual variations of Raw with lung volumes. One classification proposes defining abnormal Raw in adults in whom FRC exceeds 2L as follows : Mild increase is defined as Raw 2.8 – 4.5 cmH₂O/L/s , moderate as between 4.54 – 8.0 cmH₂O/L/s, severe as > 8.0 cmH₂O/L/s. It is prudent to evaluate both Raw and sRaw because resistance to airflow varies at different lung volumes as airways are wider at high lung volumes than at low lung volumes. Patients with COPD and severe hyperinflation may show only a moderate elevation of Raw as they have high FRC, while sRaw will be severely affected.

Conclusion :

Body Plethysmography is a non-invasive lung function test providing important additional information on lung volumes and airway resistance, over and above that provided by spirometry. It is less effort dependent than spirometry, and a relatively quick procedure. The measurements are performed during quiet breathing; hence it is more physiological. Though the equipment required is quite expensive, yet Body Plethysmography is valuable in assessing respiratory disorders and is considered the gold standard for lung volume measurements.

References :

1. DuBois, A.B., Botelho, S.Y., Bedell, G.N., Marshall, R., and Comroe, J.H, Jr. 1956. A rapid plethysmographic method for measuring thoracic gas volume: a comparison with a nitrogen washout method for measuring functional residual capacity in normal subjects. J. Clin. Invest. 35:322-326.
2. DuBois, A.B., Botelho, S.Y., and Comroe, J.H., Jr. 1956. A new method for measuring airway resistance in man using a body plethysmograph; values in normal subjects and in patients with respiratory disease. J. Clin. Invest. 35:327-335.
3. Fishman's Pulmonary Diseases and Disorders, Fifth Edition Copyright © 2015 by McGraw-Hill
4. Criée CP, Sorichter S, Smith HJ, Kardos P, et al ,Working Group for Body Plethysmography of the German Society for Pneumology and Respiratory Care. Body plethysmography-its principles and clinical use. Respir Med. 2011 Jul;105(7):959-71.

Cardio-Pulmonary Exercise Testing : Measurement and Clinical Utility



Surg. Capt. (Retd.) P. Shyamsunder Tampi

Senior Consultant Pulmonologist & Physician, Bombay Hospital & Medical Research Center & Asian Cancer Institute-Cumballa Hill Hospital, Mumbai
Former Honorary Professor & Unit Head, Dept. of Medicine, Grant Medical College & Sir J. J. Group of Hospitals
E-mail : shyamtampi@yahoo.co.in

Introduction :

Cardio-pulmonary exercise testing (CPET) is a form of exercise testing which involves the analysis of gas exchange during exercise at incrementally increasing intensity. A computerised protocol provides breath-by-breath measurement of volume of oxygen consumption (VO_2), volume of carbon dioxide (VCO_2) production, air expired (VE) and cardiac parameters like blood pressure, pulse rate etc. It provides information beyond standard exercise testing and is also a reproducible quantitation of cardiorespiratory fitness. It also provides diagnostic and prognostic information for cardiovascular and pulmonary diseases.

Indications (American Heart Association) :

Class I - (Indicated)

1. Evaluate exercise capacity and response to therapy in heart failure patients being considered for transplantation.
2. Differentiate cardiac versus pulmonary limitation for dyspnea on exertion

Class IIa - (Good supportive evidence)

1. Evaluate exercise capacity when indicated for medical reasons when subjective estimates (exercise test time or work rate) are unreliable.

Class IIb - (Weak supportive evidence)

1. Evaluate response to intervention in which exercise tolerance is an important end point.
2. Determine exercise training intensity for cardiac rehabilitation.

Class III - (Not indicated)

Routine use to evaluate exercise capacity.

Procedure :

The patient exercises on a Treadmill or on a bicycle ergometer. The latter is preferred because work rate can be directly measured. The patient is connected to a mouthpiece attached to a spirometer and a metabolic cart. Hence real-time measurements on ventilatory and gas exchange parameters are obtained. Other parameters apart from electrocardiography and non invasive blood pressure, which are continuously monitored are pulse rate, oxygen saturation with pulse oximetry, flow, volume, exhaled oxygen and carbon dioxide concentrations. Incremental or constant work load protocol may be used. The test needs to be terminated if the patient :

- (a) Develops significant hypoxemia ; or,
- (b) Gets fatigued or exhausted; or,
- (c) Develops myocardial ischemia, arrhythmia, significant blood pressure elevation; etc, suggesting cardiovascular instability.

Physiology of Coupling of External to Cellular Respiration :

The journey of oxygen extraction by the lungs from the air and its transport via the pulmonary and systemic circulation till its utilisation at the cellular level is depicted in Figure 1.

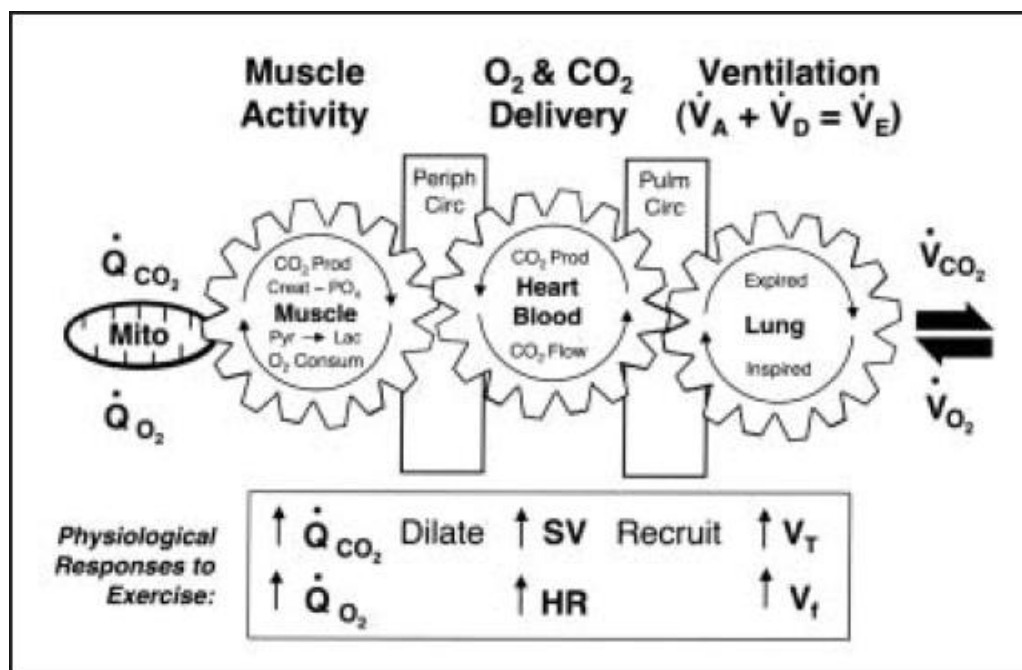


Figure 1. Gas transport mechanisms coupling cellular (internal) respiration to pulmonary (external) respiration.

Circ = circulation; CO₂ = carbon dioxide; Consum = consumption; Creat = creatine; Lac = lactate; HR = heart rate; Mito = mitochondria; PO₄ = phosphate; O₂ = oxygen; Periph = peripheral; Prod = production; Pulm = pulmonary; Pyr = pyruvate; Q_{CO₂} = carbon dioxide production; Q_{O₂} = oxygen utilization; SV = stroke volume. Takes into account delivery, extraction and utilisation of oxygen.

(From : Principles of Exercise Testing and Interpretation, 3rd edition, reproduced with permission from Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

Fick Equation – Clinical Interpretation :

VO₂ = [Cardiac Output (CO)] x [Arterio-venous oxygen difference (A-VO₂)],

since Cardiac output is the product of Heart Rate (HR) and Stroke Volume (SV), the equation can be rewritten as

VO₂ = HR x SV x [CaO₂ – CvO₂] (the difference between arterial and venous oxygen content)

HR → variation indicates Sinus node dysfunction or maybe due to the effect of drugs

SV → abnormalities point towards a possibility of Cardiomyopathies, contractility issues, EDV – ESV (End-diastolic – End-systolic volume)

CaO₂ → is dependent on the PaO₂, hemoglobin and the pulmonary capacity

CvO₂ → Skeletal muscle, Blood flow

CPET – Important Terms :

VO₂ = oxygen consumption (a measure of Cardiovascular & Respiratory fitness)

- Absolute (L/min) vs Relative (ml/kg/min)

RER = respiratory exchange ratio (measure of effort)

- VCO₂/VO₂ - amount of CO₂ per O₂ consumed
- RER > 1.0 extra CO₂ produced - corresponds to lactate production
- RER > 1.10 - considered maximal effort

VE/VCO₂ slope + vent efficiency/dead space

- Prognostic in Heart Failure : > 34 → worse prognosis

Dyspnea index = peak exercise ventilation/MVV (Maximum voluntary ventilation)

- > 50 per cent = onset of dyspnea
- > 80 per cent = exercise ceases usually within 1 minute
- Breathing reserve = (1 – Dyspnea index)

O₂ pulse = VO₂ / HR – SV x A-V O₂ difference. A surrogate for stroke volume.

Several parameters are being measured and a lot of data is generated during CPET. However, all available information needs to be interpreted and clinically correlated judiciously.

VO₂ → Equals metabolic oxygen consumption. It increases linearly with the level of exercise/work intensity until it reaches a plateau (= **VO₂ max** - which is the best index of **aerobic capacity**) due to cardiac limitations and/or tissue extraction.

VCO₂ → Is the measured carbon dioxide output and is the same as its metabolic production. It increases at the same rate as VO₂ at lower work levels, but at higher work levels the VCO₂ rises more steeply. This is consequent to bicarbonate buffering of increased lactate accumulation due to onset of anerobic metabolism.

Anerobic threshold → Is the point at which the VCO₂ increases disproportionately to VO₂ due to onset of increased lactate production and bicarbonate buffering. It is a marker for the onset of metabolic acidosis during incremental work levels and usually occurs at 50 - 75 per cent of the VO₂ max.

Oxygen pulse → Is the ratio of VO₂ and heart rate and indicates the oxygen consumed per cardiac cycle.

The etiologies of exercise limitation are categorized into three types :

- (1) Cardiovascular diseases
- (2) Respiratory diseases
- (3) Physical deconditioning

CPET can help to identify the cause of exercise limitation. Cardiovascular causes can be assessed by analysing the oxygen pulse, anaerobic threshold and relationship to intensity of work. The pulmonary causes can be assessed by analysing the PaCO₂, maximal respiratory rate and the respiratory reserve (peak VE/MVV). Gas exchange abnormalities can be derived from physiological dead space assessment, pulse oximetry, and calculating the alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient [P(A—a) O₂]. The quantum of decrease in VO₂ max or maximal exercise capacity on CPET is indicative of the severity of the exercise limitation. The normal cardio-pulmonary response to exercise is shown in Table 1.

Normal Cardiopulmonary Response to Exercise

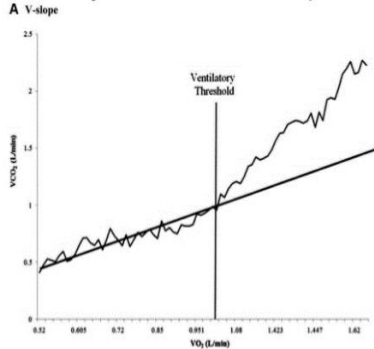
	Rest	Exercise	Increase
VO ₂ , L/min	0.250	3.0-4.5	12-18 x
HR, bpm	70	180	2.5-3 x
SV, ml	70	105-140	1.5-2 x
CO, L/min	5	20-25	4-5 x
VE, L/min	8	180	20-25 x

Table 1. Normal Cardio-Pulmonary Response to Exercise

V-Slope Method :

When the net increase in lactate accumulation produces an acidosis, $\dot{V}CO_2$ accelerates faster relative to $\dot{V}O_2$. When you plot $\dot{V}CO_2$ versus $\dot{V}O_2$, the relationship is two separate, but linear, components. The intercept of these two slopes is the Ventilatory or Lactate or Anerobic Threshold. This is shown in Figure 2 and Figure 3 respectively.

Ventilatory Threshold: V-Slope Method



Circulation 122:191-225, 2010

Figure 2. Ventilatory Threshold

Lactate Threshold

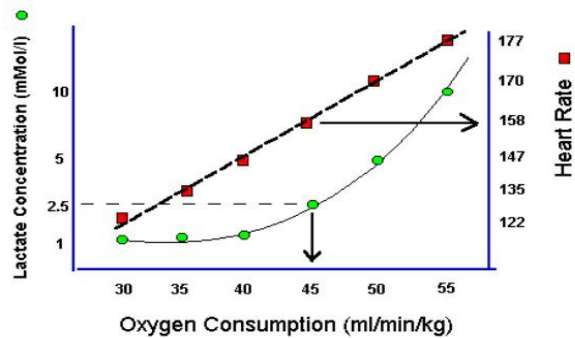


Figure 3. Lactate Threshold

A sample CPET report of a 76 years old male is depicted in Figures 4 & 5

Summary Report

Cardiopulmonary Exercise Test Results

Reason for Test: Define exercise capacity

Resting Data
 Age: 76 Height (in): 74 Weight (lb): 185 BMI: 23.79 Gender: Male Race: Caucasian

Spirometry

	Ref	Pre	Pre
FVC	Liters	5.00	6.54
FEV1	Liters	3.74	4.04
FEV1/FVC %		74	62
PEF	L/sec	9.01	10.79
MVV	L/min	134	150

 *Predicted $\dot{V}O_2$ (mL/kg/min) 23.0
 Patient effort, understanding, and cooperation good.

Exercise Summary
 Protocol: 30 watt ramp Exercise Time: 10:00 Beta-Blocker: No
 Baseline ECG Rhythm: NSR
 ST Segment Changes: None Ectopy: Isolated PAC's Unifocal PVC's
 Workload (Watts): 300 13.2 METs
 **Exercise Oscillatory Breathing Criteria Met: No Heart rate recovery (1st min): Normal
 Test procedure was terminated by subject: Subject complained of general fatigue Peak RPE 19/20

Summary Report

Rest:	HR	SBP	DBP	SpO2	PET CO2	Rate Pressure Product
Peak:	65	140	93	96 %	29.1	9100
	179	202	104	94 %	36.5	Heart Rate Max 124 %
						Heart Rate Reserve 114

Metabolic Responses

	Measured	% Predicted
Relative $\dot{V}O_2$ (mL/kg/min)	39.1	170 %
Absolute $\dot{V}O_2$ (L/min)	5.28	
VE- $\dot{V}CO_2$ Slope (25-75% Method)	24.7	85 %
Respiratory Exchange Ratio (RER)	1.17	
Ventilatory Threshold (VT) (mL/kg/min)	32.3	140 % Pred $\dot{V}O_2$
Ventilatory Threshold (VT) (L/min)	2.720	
Heart rate at VT (bpm)	143	
VE Max (L/min) BTSP	114.7	
VE/MVV Ratio	76 %	
O2 Pulse (mL/beat)	18.3	137 %

*Karlman Wasserman, MD, PhD et al. Principles of Exercise Testing and Interpretation, 4th Ed. LWW 2006
 **King-Guo Sun, MD, James E. Hansen, MD, John F. Beshai, MD, Karlman Wasserman, MD, PhD. JACC Vol. 55 No. 17, 2010

Figures 4 & 5. Cardio-Pulmonary Exercise Test Report

The typical findings seen on CPET in cardiovascular disease and pulmonary disease are compared in Table 2.

Typical CPX Findings in CV and Pulmonary Disease

	Cardiovascular	Pulmonary
Peak $\dot{V}O_2$	Reduced	Reduced
Ventilatory threshold	Reduced	Normal or reduced
$\Delta\dot{V}O_2/\Delta WR$	Often reduced	Normal
Peak HR	May be reduced	May be reduced
Peak $\dot{V}O_2$ /HR	Often reduced	May be reduced
Breathing reserve, 1 - (peak $\dot{V}E$ /MVV)	>20%	<15%
Postexercise FEV ₁	Unchanged from rest	May decrease compared with rest
PaO ₂ or Sao ₂	Normal	Often reduced
VD/tidal volume or $\dot{V}E/\dot{V}CO_2$	May be elevated	Often elevated

WR indicates work rate; HR, heart rate; and VD, dead space.

Circulation 122:191-225, 2010

Table 2. Comparison of CPET findings in Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Diseases

Conclusion :

CPET can be performed in order to determine the cause of dyspnea viz. pulmonary versus cardiac (or both) versus deconditioning versus obesity. It is a very sensitive test and can identify even subclinical disease. It can therefore be performed to objectively measure functional capacity as for preoperative assessment or disability evaluation and as a run up to heart and/or lung transplantation. CPET can also be performed to determine prognosis and measure response to therapy in heart failure patients, optimise settings for rate-adaptive pacemakers and research.

References :

1. Vivekananthan K, Lavie CJ, Milani RV, Stress testing.in: Lavie CJ Lubin MF Clinics Atlas of Office Procedures-Cardiovascular Disease. WB Saunders Co, Philadelphia, Pa2000: 377-91.
2. Milani RV, Lavie CJ, Spiva H, Limitations of estimating metabolic equivalents in exercise assessment in patients with coronary artery disease.Am J Cardiol. 1995; 75: 940-2.
3. Milani RV, Lavie CJ, Mehra MR, Cardiopulmonary exercise testing: how do we differentiate the cause of dyspnea?. Circulation. 2004; 110: e27-e31
4. Wasserman K, Hansen JE, Sue DY, Casaburi R, Whipp BJ: Principles of Exercise Testing and Interpretation. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, Pa1999
5. Balady GJ,et al in Clinician's Guide to cardiopulmonary exercise testing in adults: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 2010 Jul 13;122(2):191-225.

Assessment of Respiratory Muscle Strength



Padma Shri Randeep Guleria

Director, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi
Professor, Department of Pulmonary, Critical Care and Sleep
Medicine, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi
E-mail : randeepguleria2002@yahoo.com

Introduction :

Assessment of respiratory muscle strength forms a critical part of pulmonary function testing. It is highly under-utilised in clinical settings and needs to be understood better by clinicians to make the best use of testing. Respiratory muscle strength testing can be done by multiple methods such as the maximal inspiratory pressure (MIP), the maximal expiratory pressure (MEP), and sniff nasal inspiratory pressure (SNIP) etc. The MIP identifies the strength of the diaphragm and other inspiratory muscles, and the MEP tells us about the strength of the expiratory muscles, including abdominal muscles. SNIP measurement is one additional test of inspiratory muscle strength which is relatively easier to perform.

Indications : The indications for respiratory muscle strength testing include :

1. Suspicion of respiratory muscle weakness such as known neuromuscular disease or unexplained dyspnea
2. Reduced vital capacity of unknown aetiology
3. Follow-up of patients with respiratory muscle weakness to assess progression/ response to therapy

Various methods :

Respiratory muscle strength can be assessed using voluntary movement test as well as non-voluntary movement tests. Commonly used tests include MIP, MEP, SNIP and transdiaphragmatic pressure measurement. Some measures which can be used as an indirect measure of respiratory muscle weakness include fall in FVC in the supine position and isolated fall in maximum voluntary ventilation. Here we will discuss the principles and performance of the commonly used tests for respiratory muscle testing.

Performance of the procedure : Maximal inspiratory pressure (MIP) and maximal expiratory pressure (MEP) can be easily measured using the lung function testing machines with some additional hand-held attachments and software downloaded on a computer and provides a real-time graph of the procedure.

Maximal inspiratory pressure (MIP) :

The procedure aims to assess the generated maximum negative pressure during inspiration. For patient's best effort, it is essential to explain and demonstrate the manoeuvre to the patient. The rubber mouthpiece with flanges is placed, and the patient is asked to seal his lips around the mouthpiece. He is, then, asked to exhale slowly to empty the lungs. Following this, the patient is instructed to breathe-in forcefully and ask to maintain the inspiratory pressure for at least 1.5 seconds. The largest negative pressure sustained for at least one second should be taken as MIP rather than the transient peak. This manoeuvre is repeated five times, and the variability between these manoeuvres should be less than 10 cm H₂O. If the patient has facial muscle weakness, he may be asked to use hands to press their lips around the mouthpiece to avoid leakage. The report should include the maximum value as well as the predicted value.

Maximal expiratory pressure (MEP) :

It is the most commonly used measure of expiratory muscle strength. It is rapid and simple to perform as it uses low-cost equipment and has well-established reference values with a lower limit of normal being 150 cm H₂O for males and 120 cm H₂O for females. However, it requires patient co-operation and co-ordination between the patient and examiner. It can give high false-positive results due to submaximal efforts or leaks around the mouth, which is common in patients with facial weakness. It is measured using a pressure manometer, usually in a sitting position with a nose clip in place. The patient is asked to perform maximum forceful exhalation, and it should be sustained for 1 - 2 seconds. This manoeuvre should be repeated 3 - 8 times, and the highest value recorded is used for interpretation. This test can be performed from total lung capacity to exhalation or from function residual capacity to exhalation. The values obtained via TLC to exhalation are usually higher than those obtained from FRC. This test helps in the assessment of cough strength, especially in patients with neuromuscular weakness.

Sniff nasal inspiratory pressure (SNIP) :

Sniff nasal inspiratory pressure is a non-invasive way of measurement of inspiratory muscle strength, including the diaphragm. It usually accurately reflects the oesophageal pressure (Pes), having the advantage of avoiding the oesophageal catheter. However, the correlation between SNIP and oesophageal pressure is reduced in patients with airway obstruction. It should be used as an additional test of inspiratory muscle strength and MIP as a single test may overestimate muscle weakness and use of more than one test reduces the chances of false-positive results. It has the advantage of being inexpensive, easily performable and reproducible. The lower limit of normal for males is usually 70 cm H₂O while for females it is 60 cm H₂O. However, the test requires patient co-operation and cannot be used for patients on mechanical ventilation. It also underestimates the muscle power in patients with airway obstruction.

The test is usually performed in the sitting position. The patient is asked to completely close one nostril by nose plug to prevent leaking whereas the other nostril is patent. The patient is asked to take a deep inspiration with mouth closed. This inspiration should be very short and explosive, causing the collapse of the unplugged nostril. At least ten tests should be performed to avoid any false-positive results.

Transdiaphragmatic pressure :

Transdiaphragmatic pressure (Pdi) is the difference between gastric pressure (Pga) and Pes ($Pdi = Pga - Pes$). It depicts the force generated by the diaphragm during inspiration. As the diaphragm is a chief inspiratory muscle, responsible for 60 - 70 % of inspiratory force, Pdi is one important parameter of inspiratory muscle strength. This test has been there for a long time, and the lower limit of normal value for males is 80 cm H₂O while for females it is 70 cm H₂O. However, it is an invasive test as it requires catheter placement into oesophagus and stomach, which can be discomforting for the patient. The availability of catheters may also be a difficult and cost is also high. The correct placement of the catheter requires an experienced operator. Two air-filled latex balloon catheters are placed, one in the stomach and other in the oesophagus. A single catheter with two balloons can also be used. These catheters are connected to the manometer, which displays the oesophageal and gastric pressure curves on the screen. To ensure correct positioning, it is necessary to observe the Pes and Pga curves. During inspiration, Pes is negative, while Pga is positive. Pdi can be measured during quiet breathing as well as during sniff manoeuvres. Additionally, magnetic stimulation of the phrenic nerve can also be done to measure Pdi. This method is complex and costly and does require a high level of competence for correct recording and interpretation.

Electrical and magnetic phrenic nerve stimulation :

These are non-volitional tests for respiratory muscle strength assessment and are extremely useful for patients who have difficulty in understanding commands or are on mechanical ventilation. To obtain maximal involuntary inspiratory contraction, electrical stimulation or magnetic stimulation of the phrenic nerve can help. These tests are based on the principle of stimulating the cervical phrenic nerve and incite a diaphragm contraction. Electrical nerve stimulation requires electrode placement and is painful, while magnetic phrenic nerve stimulation causes less discomfort and is tolerated by most patients. It works on the principle of creation of a magnetic field in the neck by using the coils. The PDI values measured by electrical and magnetic stimulation are usually similar. Due to its more comforting nature, magnetic stimulation has replaced electrical stimulation in current practice. The lower limit of normal for Pdi by magnetic stimulation is 20 cm H₂O. The disadvantage is that it can sometimes be non-specific and may stimulate neck muscles, causing jerky contraction. The instrument used is costly and not readily available in all centres. The device consists of a generator with coils attached to it. Most often, a 90-mm circular coil is used, and it gives unilateral stimulation. However, a figure of eight coil can also be used, which provides bilateral stimulation. The major disadvantage of Pdi measurement is the need for placement of gastric and oesophageal balloon catheters. It is used most often in research settings and mechanically ventilated patients.

Diaphragm Ultrasound :

Ultrasonography of the diaphragm can also be used to assess the strength and thickness. It can be done by the vascular probe in the zone of apposition where diaphragm appears as a thick band between the pleural and peritoneal line. The thickness of the diaphragm and thickness fraction can be measured to identify and follow-up the diaphragm function. Use of a curved probe allows for measuring diaphragm excursion during quiet breathing as well as during sniff manoeuvre.

Conclusion :

Use of various tests discussed above helps in measurement of respiratory muscle weakness. The principles, advantages and disadvantages of each test should be understood well to use them appropriately. MIP and MEP remain most easily available and used tests for this purpose. However, in current times the use of ultrasound for this purpose is increasing.

References :

1. Guleria R. Respiratory Muscle Function. *In* : Textbook of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine (2017). Ed. S. K. Jindal, Jaypee Publishers, New Delhi pp. 314-23.
2. Pande JN, Verma SK, Singh SP, Guleria R, Khilnani GC. Respiratory pressures in normal Indian subjects . *Ind. J. Chest Dis. Allied Sci.* 1998; 40(4): 251-6
3. Guleria R, Arora N, Bhatt S. Utility of Sniff Nasal Inspiratory Pressure in Assessment of Inspiratory Muscle Strength in North Indians. *Chest.* 2013;144(4_MeetingAbstracts):742A. doi:10.1378/chest.1701632

Impulse Oscillometry



Ritisha Bhatt

**Assistant Professor, Department of Respiratory Medicine
Shri Guru Ram Rai Institute of Medical Sciences, Dehradun, Uttarakhand
E-mail : rbritishabhatt@gmail.com**

Introduction :

Pulmonary function tests are the cornerstone in the diagnosis of obstructive airway disease. In 1956, DuBois et al. described the forced oscillation technique (FOT) as a tool to measure lung function using sinusoidal sound waves of single frequencies generated by a loud speaker and passed into the lungs during tidal breathing¹. In 1975, Michaelson et al. improvised the technique to use multiple frequency sound waves which was named impulse oscillometry (IOS)². In 1998 Jaeger made computerised IOS commercially available³.

Principle of Impulse Oscillometry :

Superimposition of sound waves on normal tidal breathing, which leads to disturbances in flow and pressure across the airways, leading to an ultimate output of respiratory resistance, reactance and impedance. This principle of IOS is derived from the Ohm's law which states that resistance is a product of division of pressure and flow.

Term	Explanation
Impedance (Xrs)	A calculation of the total force needed to propagate a pressure wave through the pulmonary system, comprising resistance and reactance
Resistance (R)	Energy required to propagate a pressure wave through the airways; to pass through the bronchi and bronchioles, and to distend the lung parenchyma. Resistance is determined when a pressure wave is unopposed by airway recoil and is in phase with airflow
Reactance (X)	Energy generated by the recoil of the lungs after distention by a pressure wave out of phase with airflow
Area of reactance (AX)	Area under the curve between the reactance values for 5Hz and the resonance frequency. (Figure 3)
Resonance frequency (Fres)	The frequency at which the lung tissue moves from passive distention to active stretch in response to the force of the pressure wave signal; graphically when reactance is zero. (Figure 3)

Table 1. Terminologies used in Impulse Oscillometry

Sound waves with higher frequencies (20 Hz) travel shorter distances, generally till the large airways. Hence, the resistance at 20 Hz (**R20**) represents the resistance of the large airways. Sound waves with lower frequencies (5 Hz) travel larger distances and generally till the small airways. Hence, the resistance at 5 Hz (**R5**) represents the total airway resistance. Subtracting R20 from R5 (**R5-R20**) reflects resistance in the small airways. (Figures 1,2). The pressure-flow relationship, determined by the resistive and elastic properties of the respiratory system is described as Respiratory Reactance (Xrs). Respiratory Impedance (Zrs) represents the total resistance of the respiratory system of which Airway Resistance (Rrs) is the most significant.

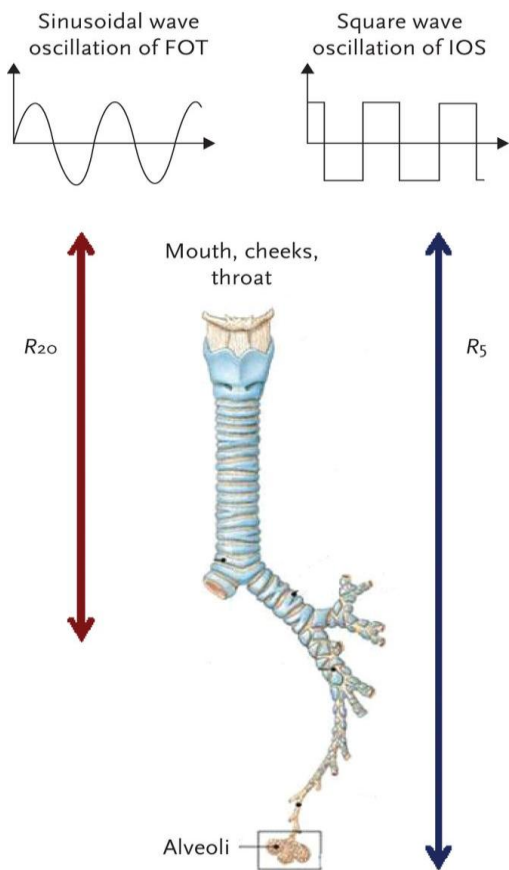


Figure 1

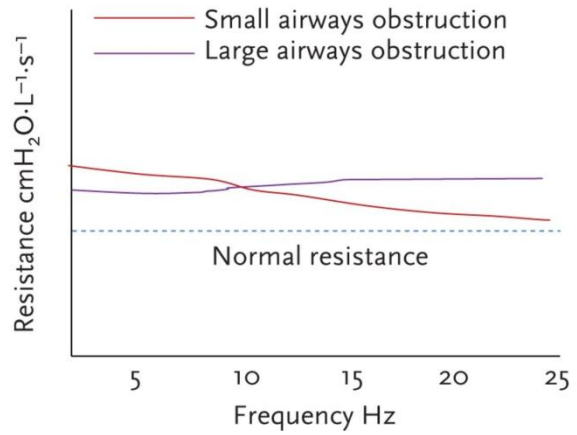


Figure 2

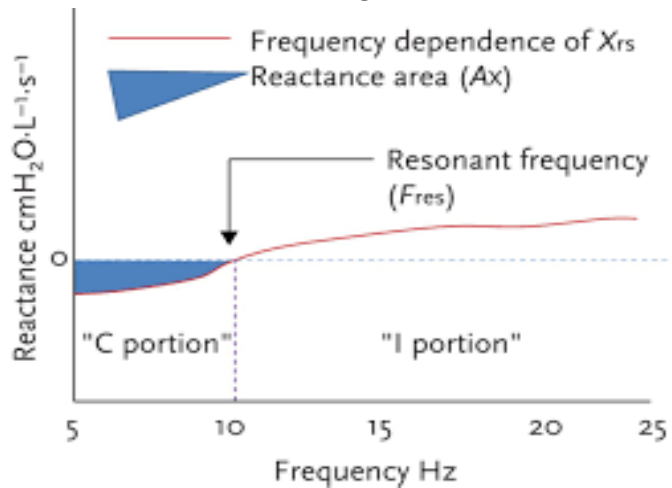


Figure 3

Figures 1, 2 & 3. Principle of Impulse Oscillometry (Fig. 1) and Measurement of Resistance (Fig. 2) and Reactance (Fig. 3)

How to perform IOS :

The IOS machine has a pneumotach and pressure transducer connected in series, with a speaker at one end and a mouthpiece at the other (Figure 4). The IOS instrument should be calibrated every day for volume using a 3 - Litre syringe and for resistance using a reference resistance of $0.2 \text{ kPa}\cdot\text{L}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}$ to ensure that the sensors are working accurately. The patient should be explained the procedure. Sitting position is preferred with legs kept uncrossed in order to reduce extra-thoracic pressure and a nose clip should be worn. The mouthpiece of the IOS should be at a comfortable height so that the neck is slightly extended. Ensure that there is a tight seal between the mouthpiece and lips to prevent air leak. To avoid dissipation of the pressure oscillation at the nose, mouth and cheeks a nose clip is applied and the cheeks should be held firmly either by the patient with his/her hands or by an assistant who presses the cheeks firmly from behind (Figure 5) . The patient should be instructed to perform normal tidal breathing in a relaxed state . The recording should be performed for at least 30 - 45 seconds. During this period, around 120 - 150 sound impulses are pushed into the lungs from which the mean reactance and resistance values are determined at frequencies from 5 to 20 Hz. A minimum of three such tests should be performed. Care should be taken to ensure reproducible results without any artefacts. For bronchodilator reversibility assessment, a short-acting bronchodilator is administered and after 20 minutes an equal number of measurements are performed in the same manner as above.

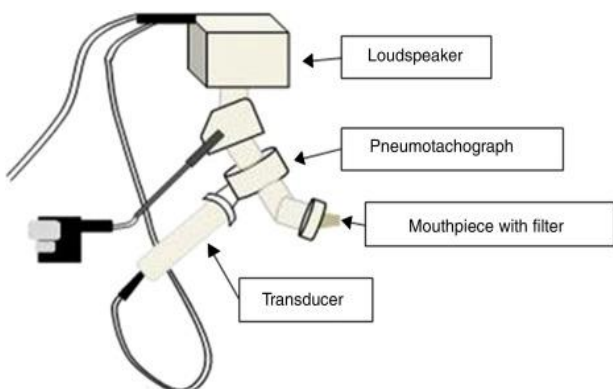


Figure 4. IOS Equipment



Figure 5. IOS Procedure

Advantages of IOS :

The patient needs to perform simple tidal breathing maneuvers that require less effort and co-operation than spirometry, hence children less than 5 years, elderly and those with physical and cognitive limitations who cannot perform spirometry easily and can therefore perform this test easily. Moreover, it can be performed in patients on ventilators and also during sleep. IOS also has much greater sensitivity to detect peripheral airways obstruction than spirometry.

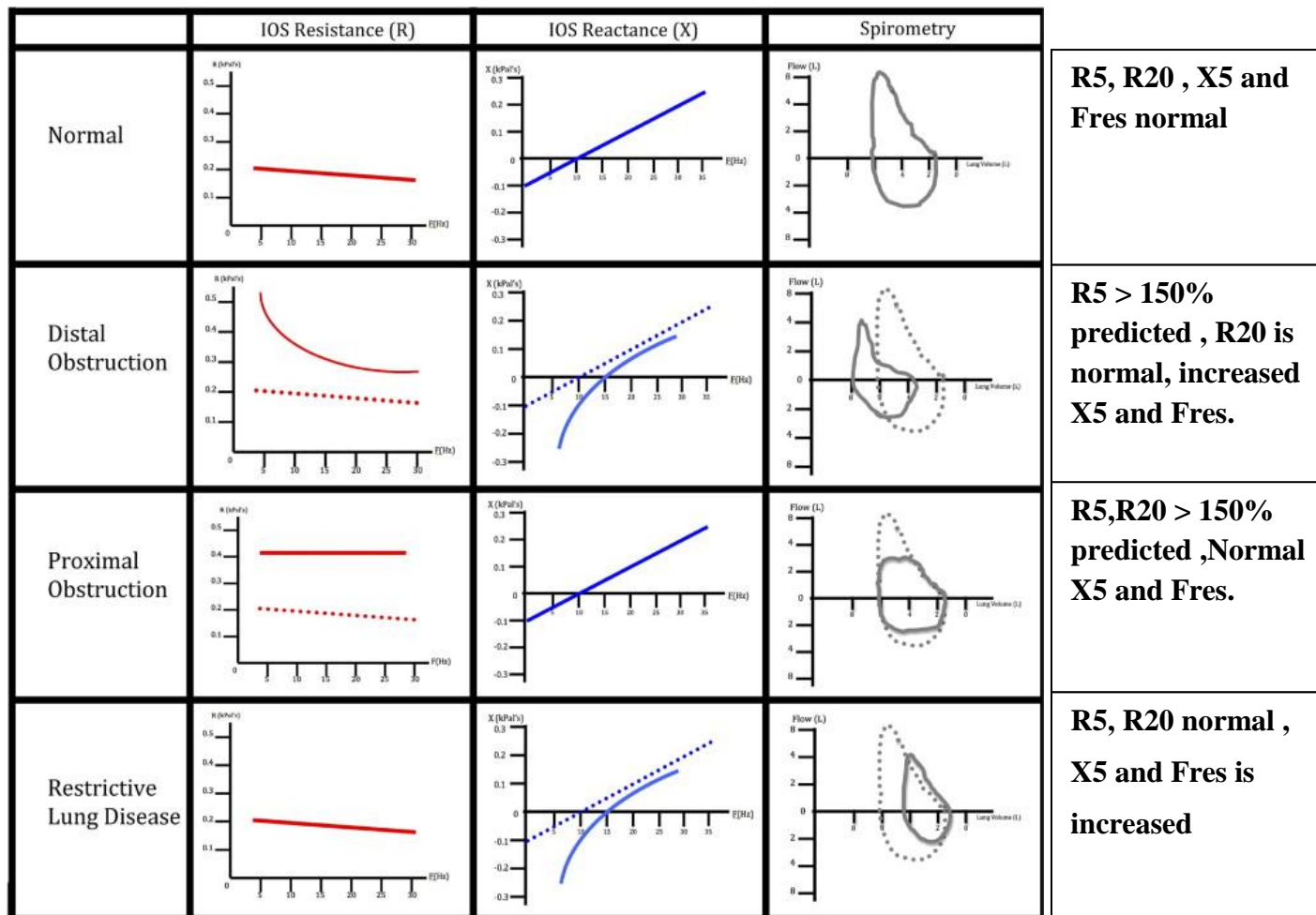


Figure 6. Interpretation of Impulse Oscillometry

References :

1. Dubois AB, Brody AW, Lewis DH, et al. Oscillation mechanics of lungs and chest in man. J Appl Physiol. 1956; 8(6): 587-94.
2. Michaelson ED, Grassman ED, Peters WR. Pulmonary mechanics by spectral analysis of forced random noise. J Clin Invest. 1975; 56(5): 1210-30.
3. Brashier B, Salvi S. Measuring lung function using sound waves: role of the forced oscillation technique and impulse oscillometry system. Breathe. 2015; 11(1): 57-65.

FENO : Measurement and Clinical Applications



Saurabh Mittal

Assistant Professor, Department of Pulmonary, Critical Care and Sleep Medicine,
All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi
E-mail : saurabh_kgmu@yahoo.co.in

Introduction :

Fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FENO) is increasingly being used in clinical practice to guide the management of airway diseases. This investigation has emerged in a big way in the last decade due to more research on this topic worldwide. The initial machines used for FENO testing were bulkier and not available as point-of-care tests. Since the availability of portable machines, the test is increasingly being used to make treatment decisions.

Nitric oxide (NO) plays a key role in modulating type-2 inflammation and in the regulation of type-2 immune responses. It is derived endogenously from the amino acid L-arginine, and its synthesis is catalyzed by one of the three forms of the enzyme NO synthase (NOS). Two constitutive NO synthases (cNOS) are generally expressed in platelets, neuronal cells, and epithelial cells and regulate the airway function. The inducible form of the enzyme (iNOS) is expressed in macrophages, neutrophils, mesangial, endothelial and vascular smooth muscle cells. It is produced in response to airway inflammation and in host defence against infection. This expression can be induced by inflammatory cytokines, such as tumour necrosis factor α , interferon γ and IL- 1β . It has also been found to be upregulated by IL-13, leading to increased levels of FENO. Nitric oxide is a messenger molecule, and its activity depends on the level of oxidative stress and its uptake by anti-oxidant molecules. It regulates multiple biological functions including platelet reactivity, blood flow, neurotransmission and neurological memory. At high concentrations, it works in cytotoxic defence mechanisms against tumours and pathogens. It is also a key inflammatory mediator in the respiratory tract. There is emerging evidence that highlights several roles for NO in regulating pulmonary function and pulmonary disease, as an endogenous modulator of airway function and as a pro-inflammatory and immunomodulatory mediator. In patients with bronchial asthma, airway inflammation is associated with increased symptoms and airway obstruction. Higher levels of FENO in asthma are associated with eosinophilic airway inflammation and increased expression of corticosteroid-sensitive inducible NOS. Higher levels of FENO may also be associated with exacerbations and disease severity.

Measurement of FENO :

FENO measurement is easy to perform; it is reproducible and has a high degree of acceptance by patients and can be a useful marker for asthma patients. The current NICE (National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, UK) guidelines recommend FENO to be used for the management of patients who remain symptomatic on inhaled corticosteroids. Several commercially available analyzers can perform FENO measurement. These analyzers differ in some aspects such as methods of measurements, complexity, or setup required. Stationary analyzers usually use the chemiluminescence method, while handheld devices use electrochemical principles to measure FENO levels. Regardless of the used technology, the analyzers should follow the standardized measurement procedures recommended by ATS (American Thoracic Society) and ERS (European Respiratory Society) in order to assure reliable FENO measurements. There is limited data available on whether the results of the different analyzers are comparable. It is important to know whether the instruments used to measure FENO can be used interchangeably in clinical practice. The various analyzers available to measure FENO levels include the handheld FENO analyzer Vivatmo *pro* (BV; Bosch Healthcare Solutions, Waiblingen, Germany), another handheld FENO analyzer NIOX VERO (CN; Circassia Pharmaceuticals plc, Oxford, United Kingdom) and the stationary Ecomedics analyzer CLD 88 (EC; Eco Medics AG, Duernten, Switzerland). A recent study has shown that for the range between 0 and 70 parts per billion (ppb), FENO levels measured with all three devices are statistically equivalent within predefined acceptance criteria and do not differ in a clinically relevant way.¹

Clinical applications :

FENO values are currently used to predict and document the response to inhaled corticosteroids, monitor adherence to inhaled corticosteroids, and as a diagnostic tool in treatment-naïve patients. The introduction of FENO testing in primary care settings can be achieved with a very low effort with respect to measurement procedures and data interpretation, while simultaneously improving the quality of care.

Various biomarkers used to identify type-2 airway inflammation include serum IgE levels, blood as well as sputum eosinophils, FENO and serum periostin levels. Increase in the sputum and bronchial epithelial eosinophils is considered the “gold standard” for identifying type-2 airway inflammation. However, the bronchial biopsy is an invasive procedure, and sputum eosinophils levels testing is not available in a large proportion of centres as it requires a lab setup. This is where the initial role of FENO testing comes. It adds an additional dimension to traditional clinical testing, with advantages including the non-invasive nature of the test, the ease of repeat measurements and its relatively simple use in patients with severe airflow obstruction, where other tests may be difficult to perform. It has been used to predict sputum eosinophilia in adult patients with asthma, irrespective of severity, atopy and smoking status. It also correlates well with the level of inflammation and shows decreased levels following inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) treatment. FENO levels may not always correlate with peripheral eosinophilia as they result from different inflammatory processes. Cytokines IL-4 and IL-13 regulate IgE synthesis and increase FENO levels, while IL-5 drives the development, recruitment and activation of eosinophils. So, FENO should not be considered a surrogate marker for sputum eosinophils; however, it is a parallel marker of type-2 airway inflammation.

At present, severe asthma management protocol involves the use of FENO levels and blood eosinophil counts for phenotyping and to guide treatment decisions. A simultaneously increased FENO, as well as blood eosinophils, are associated with a higher chance of uncontrolled asthma.

FENO and exacerbations :

A higher FENO level is a predictive factor for asthma exacerbations. Multiple systematic reviews of clinical trials in asthma management have demonstrated that altering asthma therapy based on FENO levels helps in the reduction of future exacerbations. A meta-analysis comparing the use of FENO to guide treatment and management based on clinical assessment demonstrated that the number of individuals with one or more asthma exacerbations was significantly lower in the FENO-guided treatment group than in the control group (odds ratio 0.60).² A similar analysis in children has demonstrated that the number of children having one or more asthma exacerbations was significantly lower in the FENO-guided group than in the control group (OR 0.58).³

FENO in asthma diagnosis :

FENO is recommended for diagnosis of suspected asthma cases by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) guidelines in the UK with values > 40 ppb in adults and > 35 ppb in children. However, this decision depends on the clinical probability of asthma and is supplemented by additional bronchial provocation testing to determine airway hyper-responsiveness. GINA suggests ≥ 20 ppb FENO complemented by other features such as blood eosinophils ≥ 150 cells/ μ L and/or sputum eosinophils $\geq 2\%$, could indicate type-2 immune response. ATS also recommends FENO testing at initial diagnosis of asthma and for monitoring of airway inflammation. According to the ATS guidelines, high FENO levels are defined as more than 50 ppb. There may be country-specific cut-offs; however, ATS recommends against these due to non-standardized data.⁴

FENO as a response predictor :

A high FENO value (> 50 ppb) is highly suggestive of better response to inhaled corticosteroid therapy in adults. A significant interaction was found between the baseline FENO levels and treatment response in a randomized controlled trial.⁵ For every ten (10) ppb higher FENO, the change in the Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ) score increased by 0.071 ($p=0.044$), more in the patients on inhaled steroids than placebo. Based on multiple studies, there is evidence to suggest that FENO can be a useful tool for ICS dose titration and guiding asthma management.

FENO to assess treatment adherence :

It can also be used to monitor adherence to inhaled steroids because persistently high levels suggest non-adherence to therapy.⁶ Among patients with difficult asthma, seven days of directly observed ICS therapy led to a significantly greater reduction in FENO levels in non-adherent patients as compared to adherent patients (52.4% versus 20.4%; $p<0.003$).⁷ This reduction in FENO after observed ICS therapy identified the patients who were thought to have refractory disease but were actually not adherent to the prescribed therapy.

Cost constraints :

The high cost is one of the most commonly cited reasons for not adopting FENO in general clinical practice. In a cost-effectiveness study from the UK, FENO's use for the diagnosis of asthma led to 43 GBP reduction in cost and using FENO to guide treatment led annual cost reduction of 341 GBP per patient compared to using lung function and other parameters.⁸ In the Indian context, the cost-effective analysis is not yet available. However, it appears appropriate to use FENO for diagnosis in high pre-test probability patients as it will prevent additional investigations and may do phenotyping at diagnosis as well. Follow-up FENO can be cost-effective in non-responsive patients as it will help guide treatment and may prevent additional investigations.

Limitations to FENO testing :

Higher FENO levels may be seen in few other conditions such as eosinophilic bronchitis, allergic rhinitis, and atopy. In upper respiratory tract infections as well as in upper airway allergy, FENO levels may be very high. Some patients with COPD also have high FENO levels which may be the subgroup which has Asthma–COPD Overlap (ACO). In a study among COPD patients, FENO levels were found to be

lower in those receiving ICS therapy. Currently, GINA does not recommend the routine use of FENO in all patients with asthma for guiding management.

Conclusion :

Recent advances in standardization and better technology have simplified the measurement of FENO levels. It is being used as a marker of airway inflammation and is a biomarker for type-2 inflammation. It can help in the diagnosis of asthma, monitoring adherence and therapy for patients with difficult asthma.

References :

1. Korn S, Wilk M, Voigt S, Weber S, Keller T, Buhl R. Measurement of Fractional Exhaled Nitric Oxide: Comparison of Three Different Analysers. :8.
2. Petsky HL, Kew KM, Turner C, Chang AB. Exhaled nitric oxide levels to guide treatment for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016 Sep 1;9:CD011440.
3. Petsky HL, Kew KM, Chang AB. Exhaled nitric oxide levels to guide treatment for children with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016 Nov 9;11:CD011439.
4. Determination of Normative Values of Fractional Nitric Oxide in Exhaled Breath (FeNO) in Healthy Indian Population - CHEST [Internet]. [cited 2021 Jan 18]. Available from: [https://journal.chestnet.org/article/S0012-3692\(16\)56211-4/fulltext](https://journal.chestnet.org/article/S0012-3692(16)56211-4/fulltext)
5. Price DB, Buhl R, Chan A, Freeman D, Gardener E, Godley C, et al. Fractional exhaled nitric oxide as a predictor of response to inhaled corticosteroids in patients with non-specific respiratory symptoms and insignificant bronchodilator reversibility: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2018 Jan;6(1):29-39.
6. Kavitha V, Mohan A, Madan K, Hadda V, Khilnani GC, Guleria R. Fractional exhaled nitric oxide is a useful adjunctive modality for monitoring bronchial asthma. *Lung India*. 2017 Apr;34(2):132-7.
7. McNicholl DM, Stevenson M, McGarvey LP, Heaney LG. The utility of fractional exhaled nitric oxide suppression in the identification of nonadherence in difficult asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012 Dec 1;186(11):1102-8.
8. Price D, Berg J, Lindgren P. An economic evaluation of NIOX MINO airway inflammation monitor in the United Kingdom. *Allergy*. 2009 Mar;64(3):431-8.

Arterial Blood Gas Interpretation



Supriya Sarkar

**Professor & Head, Department of Respiratory Medicine,
College of Medicine and Sagore Dutta hospital, Kolkata
E-mail : drssupriyo@gmail.com**

Introduction :

As pulmonologists, ensuring optimum oxygen (O₂) delivery is our basic duty. That is more relevant in the present COVID era. So, analysis of Arterial Blood Gas (ABG) should start from the partial pressure of arterial oxygen (PaO₂). ABG also gives us good additional information about pH, bicarbonate (HCO₃⁻), and the metabolic status of the body like acidosis and alkalosis.

Before analysing ABG, the validity of the report should be assessed first by a formula :

$$"80 - X = 24 \times \text{PCO}_2 \text{ (partial pressure of carbon-di-oxide)} / \text{HCO}_3^-",$$

where "X" is the first two digits after the decimal point in pH value. Arterial and venous blood gas can be easily differentiated by seeing oxygen saturation of capillary blood (SpO₂). ABG analysis should be done step-wisely (Figure 1) as below :

Step-wise analysis of ABG :

A. First step (Analysis of PaO₂) :

Hypoxaemia is defined as PaO₂ less than 80 mm of Hg. Hypoxaemia is classified into :

- i) *Mild*, when PaO₂ is between 79 – 60 mm of Hg,
- ii) *Moderate*, when PaO₂ is between 59 – 40 mm of Hg, and,
- iii) *Severe*, when PaO₂ is less than 40 mm of Hg.

Due to peculiarity of the oxygen dissociation curve, a sharp fall of oxygen saturation below PaO₂ – 60 mm of Hg, Respiratory failure is defined as a PaO₂ of less than 60 mm of Hg in room air at sea level at normal atmospheric pressure.

PaO₂ depends on O₂ therapy and calculated or measured fraction of inspiratory oxygen (FiO₂). In emergency situation, it is not ethical, moral or practical to hold oxygen delivery till an ABG sample is taken. In that situation, expected PaO₂ can be calculated as " PaO₂ = 500 x FiO₂ ".

In presence of hypoxemia, three parameters should be looked for :

1. *PaCO₂* : PaCO₂ is inversely proportional to alveolar ventilation. Raised PaCO₂ indicates alveolar hypoventilation. Causes of hypoventilation may be a disease process in the respiratory centres, nerves, muscles, chest wall and in COPD (due to increased dead space ventilation). Whereas, decreased PaCO₂ indicates hyperventilation and that usually occurs in type I respiratory failure. All type I respiratory failure will convert into type II respiratory failure at terminal stages.
2. *Ratio between PaO₂ and FiO₂* : Ratio less than 300 may indicate acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) subject to fulfilment of other criteria. The ratio is also used to assess the severity of ARDS.
3. *Alveolo-arterial oxygen gradient D (PAO₂ – PaO₂)* : PAO₂ is calculated with the alveolar gas equation, as follows :
" PAO₂ = FiO₂ [PB – PH₂O (water vapor pressure)] – PaCO₂ / R (respiratory quotient) ".

Normal level of D (PAO₂ – PaO₂) is age divided by 3. High gradient indicates lung parenchymal involvement.

B. Second step (Analysis of pH) :

Normal value of pH is 7.4 ± 0.05 . High pH indicates alkalosis and low pH indicates acidosis. Both acidosis and alkalosis may be caused by respiratory and metabolic disorders. Respiratory disorders are characterized by primary change of PaCO_2 (increased in acidosis and decreased in alkalosis). Whereas, metabolic disorders are characterized by primary change in HCO_3^- level (increased in alkalosis and decreased in acidosis). Sometimes, pH may be near normal level due to compensatory mechanism, as compensation makes pH return close towards normal but not to the normal value. In that case, 7.4 may be considered as the reference value.

C. Third step (Analysis of PaCO_2) :

The normal value of PaCO_2 is 40 ± 5 mm of Hg. A raised PaCO_2 indicates respiratory acidosis or compensation to metabolic alkalosis. On the other hand, a low PaCO_2 indicates respiratory alkalosis or compensation to metabolic acidosis. pH level can differentiate among them. Basic understanding is that PaCO_2 changes in the opposite direction to pH i.e. PaCO_2 increases with a fall in pH (respiratory acidosis) and decreases with a rise in pH (respiratory alkalosis). If PaCO_2 changes in the same direction as that of pH, respiratory pathology is not the primary responsible event. The clinical setting, PaO_2 and HCO_3^- level are also helpful. As for example, a low PaO_2 indicates a respiratory disorder.

D. Fourth step (Analysis of HCO_3^-) :

HCO_3^- rise may be due to metabolic alkalosis or compensation to respiratory acidosis. Whereas, HCO_3^- fall is due to metabolic acidosis or compensation to respiratory alkalosis.

Base excess (BE) or base deficit indicates an excess / deficit of base in the blood, respectively. They indicate the amount of a fixed acid or base that must be added to a blood sample to achieve a pH of 7.4, under standard conditions. Normal range of base excess is between -2 to $+2$ mEq/L. More than $+2$ mEq/L indicates metabolic alkalosis and less than -2 mEq/L indicates metabolic acidosis.

BE is calculated as $0.93 \times [(\text{HCO}_3^-) - 24.4 + 14.8 \times (\text{pH} - 7.4)]$ or $0.93 \times [\text{HCO}_3^-] + 13.77 \times \text{pH} - 124.58$.

E. Fifth step (Assessment of Compensation) :

Following points are very important for analysis of compensation :

1. Respiratory compensation is fast, as lungs are quick to respond, but the compensation is usually incomplete. Whereas, metabolic compensation is slow, as kidneys are relatively lazy organs, but the compensation is usually complete.
2. Respiratory disorders are classified into acute with minimum compensation and chronic events with almost total compensation.
3. Compensation (secondary changes) occurs in same direction to the primary changes, but overcompensation never occurs and it indicates a mixed disorder. PaCO_2 and HCO_3^- going in different directions also indicate a mixed disorder and, in that case, the predominant pathology has to be interpreted clinically.
4. For metabolic disorder the respiratory compensation can be simply calculated as :
 i) $\text{PaCO}_2 = (1.5 \times [\text{HCO}_3^-]) + 8 \pm 2$ in case of metabolic acidosis ; and,
 ii) $\text{HCO}_3^- + 15$ (when HCO_3^- level is within 10 to 40 mmol/L) in case of metabolic alkalosis.
5. For respiratory disorders the compensation can be calculated by the " 1- 2- 3- 4 " rule. HCO_3^- increase will be 1 and 4 mmol/L for every 10 mm of Hg increase of PaCO_2 in acute respiratory acidosis and chronic respiratory acidosis, respectively. Similarly, HCO_3^- decrease will be 2 and 3 mmol/L for every 10 mm of Hg decrease of PaCO_2 in acute respiratory alkalosis and chronic respiratory alkalosis, respectively.
6. Less or more secondary changes than the calculated levels of compensation indicate a mixed disorder.

F. Sixth step [Calculation of Anion Gap (AG)] :

Anion gap (AG) is calculated as $\text{Na}^+ - [\text{Cl}^- + \text{HCO}_3^-]$ and it indicates unmeasured anions like albumin, phosphates, sulfates and organic anions. Its normal value is 8 to 10 mmol/L. AG calculation is particularly important in metabolic acidosis. Causes of high AG acidosis include diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, renal failure, acidosis due to toxins, etc. Whereas, causes of normal anion gap acidosis include diarrhoea (bicarbonate loss), renal tubular acidosis, K^+ sparing diuretics, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor therapy, etc.

Sometimes, AG may be the only abnormality in the ABG report. As for example, a person with ketoacidosis with severe vomiting may have an apparently normal ABG [PH – 7.40, PaO_2 – 90 mm of Hg, PaCO_2 – 40 mm of Hg, HCO_3^- – 25 mmol/L, Na^+ – 135 mEq/L, K^+ – 3mEq/L, Cl^- – 80 mEq/L]. Here high AG suggests abnormality in ABG.

It should be kept in mind that meticulous attention for BE, AG and lactate level can be helpful in identify hidden metabolic acidosis.

G. Seventh step (Clinical Correlation and Application) : Interesting cases :

1. Following vivax malaria, a 30 years old lady developed acute onset respiratory distress. Her ABG showed PH – 7.49, PaO₂ – 73 mm of Hg, PaCO₂ – 34 mm of Hg and HCO₃⁻ – 25.6 mmol/L. ABG could be interpreted as simple respiratory alkalosis. The lady was receiving oxygen @ 5L/ min with calculated FiO₂ - 0.4 and PaO₂/ FiO₂ = 182.5. Her chest X-ray film showed bilateral lung infiltrates, her echocardiography did not show any abnormality and she was diagnosed as a case of ARDS.
2. A man presented with respiratory distress and ABG showing PH – 7.34, PaO₂ – 54 mm of Hg, PaCO₂ – 50 mm of Hg and HCO₃⁻ – 29 mmol/L. The report was naturally interpreted as respiratory acidosis (based on low PH and high PaCO₂), commonly found in exacerbation of COPD and that could have been managed conventionally with biphasic positive airway pressure (BiPAP) therapy. On the other hand, in asthmatics ABG usually shows respiratory alkalosis with low PaCO₂. A rise of PaCO₂, even normal level, is considered abnormal in asthmatics. Same ABG in asthmatics should be taken seriously and they may require invasive ventilation.
3. A man admitted in ICU with ABG showing respiratory acidosis [PaCO₂ – 70 mm of Hg and HCO₃⁻ – 32 mmol/L]. The compensatory increase of HCO₃⁻ is expected to be 3 or 12 mmol/L for acute or chronic respiratory acidosis, respectively. ABG report can be interpreted as ‘respiratory acidosis with metabolic alkalosis’ in acute clinical setting or ‘respiratory acidosis with metabolic acidosis’ in chronic clinical setting.
4. A man with acute exacerbation of COPD showing PH – 7.164, PaO₂ – 66 mm of Hg, PaCO₂ – 89 mm of Hg and HCO₃⁻ – 36.2 mmol/L was put on invasive ventilation. Next day his ABG showed PH – 7.61, PaO₂ – 86 mm of Hg, PaCO₂ – 46 mm of Hg and HCO₃⁻ – 39.2 mmol/L. In isolation the second report may be interpreted as metabolic alkalosis. But, comparing with first report the diagnosis was respiratory alkalosis (rapid rise of pH can only be explained by substantial fall of PaCO₂ not by small rise of HCO₃⁻) that needed adjustment of ventilatory set up.

Conclusion :

There is always a gap between knowledge and its application. Never read an ABG report in isolation. ABG reports must be interpreted in the background of clinical settings. Do not interpret an ABG in isolation but on the background of the previous ABG. All ABG reports must include FiO₂ or level of O₂ therapy. Finally , keep in mind to ‘Treat the patient, not the ABG report’.

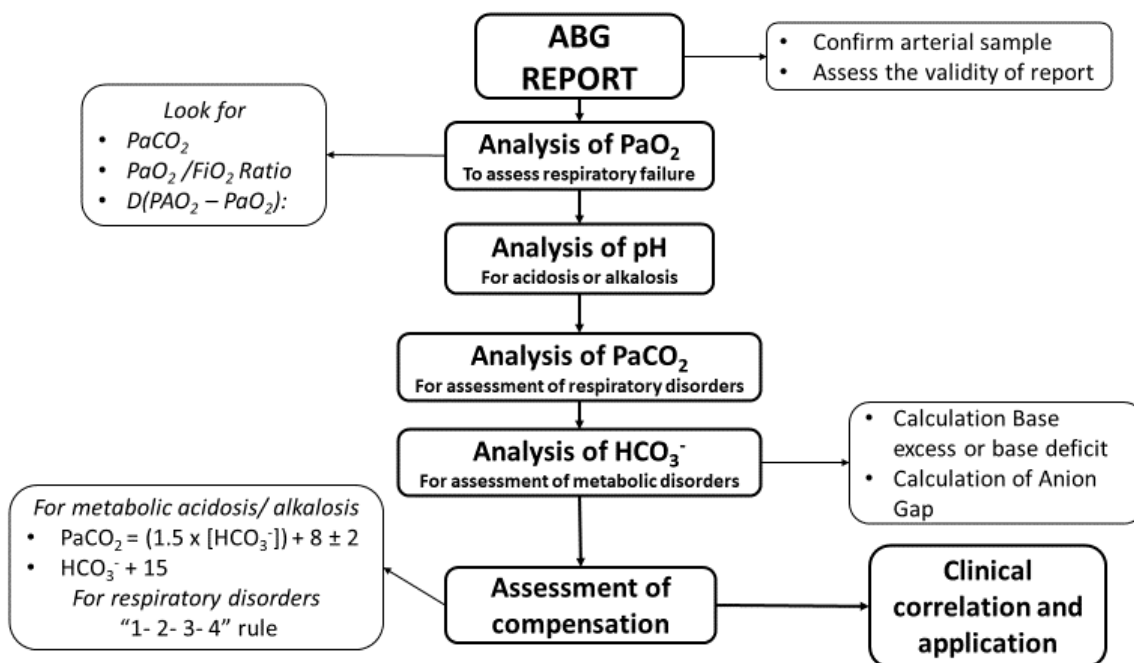


Figure 1. Flow chart for analysis of ABG

References :

1. 101 cases in Respiratory Medicine (2018) Ed. Supriya Sarkar. Jaypee publishers, New Delhi.

Spirometry Practice in the COVID Era



P. S. Shankar

**Emeritus Professor of Medicine & Senior CEO, KBN Teaching Hospital, Kalaburagi, Karnataka
Emeritus Professor of Medicine, Rajiv Gandhi University of Health Sciences, Karnataka
E-mail : drpsshankar@gmail.com**

Introduction :

Pulmonary function tests form an important objective diagnostic investigation in the diagnosis, evaluation and management of respiratory disorders. During the previous and current year, the world has witnessed an unprecedented pandemic of COVID-19 due to Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2) infection. The causative agent is highly contagious that can spread by persons infected with COVID-19 who may be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Undertaking spirometry in such a background of COVID-19 pandemic is highly risky as the test is associated with forced respiration, cough and production of droplets and aerosols, and the infective agent (SARS-CoV-2) spreads through them. There is need to take all precautions to minimise the risk of infections to patients, healthcare workers and staff involved in the test procedure.

In this background, it is necessary to determine the need for testing. Many factors come in the picture on the decision on whether to undertake the test or defer¹. It has to be established whether the risk to the patient and the staff outweigh the risk to the patient of deferring the test. If it is concluded that the test is not that essential, then it can be delayed until the prevalence of COVID-19 has subsided.

Screening :

It is necessary to screen patients to know whether they are infected. They should be questioned about having acute respiratory symptoms such as fever, cough, rhinorrhoea, sore throat, body ache, and loss of smell and taste. In presence of such symptoms, pulmonary function tests should not be undertaken as such patients are capable of transmitting infection. It should be noted that even patients/persons who do not exhibit any symptoms, may still be infected but asymptomatic or pre-symptomatic, with a capability to spread the disease to others. All these patients/persons should be screened for the presence of SARS-CoV-2 infection with nucleotide amplification assay tests such as SARS-CoV-2 RT-PCR. If the result is positive, spirometry should not be undertaken. If the test is negative, spirometry may be undertaken with all safety measures in place if the test is absolutely necessary.

Precautions and Performance :

The testing room should have proper ventilation and negative pressure (air flow from clean to potentially contaminated area). The exhaust should be from the room to outside, of through filters capable of capturing droplets and aerosols, such as high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters. It is advisable to undertake the test at the end of the day so as to allow sufficient time for ventilation, cleaning and disinfection of the room. Such a precaution is necessary when the test is performed in multi-purpose clinic rooms used for different consultants or procedures².

While performing spirometry social distancing must be maintained. There should be 2-meter distance between the technician and the patient. The physical positioning should be made in such a way so that the technician is out of the direct plume of exhaled air or cough. Staff performing the testing should wear personal protection equipment (PPE) consisting of a face mask, face shield, N-95 respirator or powered air purifying respirator (PAPR), gown and gloves that limits aerosolized droplet acquisition for staff. Hands should be thoroughly washed before and after each test. Only the patient to be tested and the technician should be present in the room.

The spirometer used should have a high-efficiency in-line bacterial and viral filter (BVF). They prevent cross contamination with corona virus. It must be noted that spirometer filters routinely used may not be adequate to prevent cross contamination. These filters are single use and are discarded following their use by each patient. It must be remembered that the filter placed on the mouthpiece may affect the accuracy of the measurement.

It is necessary to provide detailed instructions about the testing procedure. Since there is a chance of inhaling virus particles in the room by the patient, nose clips have to be applied and patients should be instructed to inhale maximally through the filter, and it is necessary that they should forcefully exhale maximally through the filter only. This will prevent virus particles in their respiratory system gaining entry into the testing area.

Lung function tests using aerosol-generating protocols (bronchodilator reversibility, etc) should be deferred. It is necessary to restrict the pulmonary function tests and to undertake only those tests essential for immediate treatment decisions. All protective measures have to be taken for the staff and the persons being tested. The surfaces of the testing area should be wiped with cleansing agents. The risk of transmission depends on the prevalence of the virus in the community, age of the patient, severity of lung disease and presence of immunosuppression.

Pulmonary function and exercise capacity remain impaired for a long time even after clinical recovery from COVID-19 pneumonia. A study of 110 patients discharged after suffering from COVID-19 found significant fall in diffusing capacity. Higher impairment in lung volumes was noted in severe cases. There was restrictive ventilatory defect³.

References :

1. American College of Occupational and Environmental Medicine. News. ACOEM Advises Suspension of Routine Occupational Spirometry Testing During COVID-19 Pandemic. March 16, 2020. Available at: <https://acoem.org/News/Press-Releases/ACOEM-Advises-Suspension-of-Routine-Occupational-Spirometry-TestingDuring-COVID-19-Pandemic>
2. Occupational Safety & Health Administration. Enforcement Memos: Discretion in Enforcement when Considering an Employer's Good Faith Efforts during the Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) Pandemic. April 16, 2020. Available at: <https://www.osha.gov/memos/2020-04-16/discretion-enforcement-when-considering-employers-good-faith-effortsduring> Last accessed 06-25-2020.
3. Xiaoneng Mo, Wenhua Jian, Zhuquan Su, Mu Chen, Hui Peng, Ping Peng, Chunliang Lei, Shiyue Li, Ruchong Chen, Nanshan Zhong n European Respiratory Journal 2020; DOI: 10.1183/13993003.01217-2020



**NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)
PERSONAL CONGRATULATIONS FOR
MEMBERS AND FELLOWS**

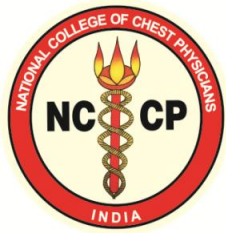
DEAR COLLEAGUES ,

AS MEMBERS / FELLOWS OF NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA) ,

If You , Your Spouse or Children have been Awarded / Felicitated / Recognized / Appreciated this year for any Outstanding Achievement(s) ,

Please do write to us at **ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com** and **sngaur9@gmail.com** attaching details (a brief description) and photograph(s) about the same for a Personalized Congratulatory Message from NCCP(I) !

All entries will be scrutinized by a Credential Committee prior to publication in NCCP(I) Newsletter - Lung Bulletin.



**NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)
NCCP(I) LUNG BULLETIN
FEEDBACK**

DEAR COLLEAGUES ,

AS READERS, YOUR OPINION AND FEEDBACK IS HIGHLY VALUABLE TO US

- ▶ How did You find the inaugural issue (January – June 2020) and this issue (July – December 2020) of NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin ?
- ▶ Did NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin live up to Your Expectations ?
- ▶ Did it add to Your Awareness about NCCP(I) Activities ?
- ▶ Did it add to Your Awareness about NCCP(I) Membership Benefits ?
- ▶ How did You find the Academic Section ?
- ▶ How can We all make NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin better together ?
- ▶ Is there anything You would like us to consider for our next issue ?

Your personal feedback is always appreciated !

Please do write to The Editor, NCCP(I) Lung Bulletin at **ncsarangdhar@rocketmail.com**



NATIONAL COLLEGE
OF
CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

Lung Bulletin

NEWSLETTER OF NATIONAL COLLEGE OF CHEST PHYSICIANS (INDIA)

SECOND ISSUE JULY – DECEMBER 2020

THEME – PULMONARY FUNCTION TESTS



SALUTES

The front runners in this Covid scenario

